



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



ok. 52

49.358.

400. / r. 140.











THE  
HUDSON'S BAY TERRITORIES

AND  
VANCOUVER'S ISLAND,

WITH AN EXPOSITION OF THE  
CHARTERED RIGHTS, CONDUCT, AND POLICY  
OF THE  
HON<sup>BLE</sup> HUDSON'S BAY CORPORATION.

BY  
R. M. MARTIN, Esq.

AUTHOR OF THE "HISTORY OF THE BRITISH COLONIES,"

&c.

---



LONDON:  
T. AND W. BOONE, N° 29, NEW BOND STREET.

MDCCCXLIX.



**LONDON :**  
**PRINTED BY T. BRETTELL, RUPERT STREET, HAYMARKET.**

## PREFATORY ADDRESS.

---

TO

THE RIGHT HON<sup>BLE</sup> EARL GREY,

*H. M. Secretary of State for the Colonies.*

---

MY LORD,

The avowed ignorance of the nation generally concerning the Hudson's Bay Company, and the natural desire to know more of the territories and proceedings of an association to whom is now being confided the Colonization of Vancouver's Island, have induced me to examine various official and public documents on the subject, in the hope that the result of my inquiry might be useful to many who wish to be better acquainted with the facts of the case, and not unacceptable even to those with whose opinions I generally concur, although in this matter at variance with the conclusions at which I have myself arrived.

I have found a further incentive to my labours in the desire to ascertain how far additional information would confirm or negative the views I had formed when writing my History of the British Colonies in 1834.

The plan which I have pursued has been—

*First*—To show the geography, physical aspect, and climate of the regions known as the Hudson's Bay Company's territories, and to furnish all the trustworthy information within my reach relative to Vancouver's Island.

*Second*—To detail the constitution and working of the Hudson's Bay Corporation at home and abroad.

*Third*—To ascertain the numbers, character, and treatment of the Indian or Aboriginal population.

*Fourth*—To investigate the conduct and policy of the ruling authorities.

*Fifth*—To inquire into the qualifications of the Hudson's Bay Company for the Colonization of Vancouver's Island.

The documents examined include the Parliamentary Papers of 8th August, 1842, and 10th August, 1848; the Report of the Aborigines' Parliamentary Committee in 1837; the Journal of the Bishop of Montreal to Rupert's Land in 1844<sup>1</sup>; the Annual Reports and Notices of the Church Missionary and Wesleyan Societies; the Official Narrative of Commodore Wilkes, of the American navy<sup>2</sup>, from 1838 to 1842; the History of Oregon and California in 1844, by Mr. Robert Greenhow, translator and librarian to the United States Government<sup>3</sup>; a "Journey beyond the Rocky Mountains in 1835-6 and 7," by the Rev. S. Parker, A.M., on behalf of the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions<sup>4</sup>; Statement of the Earl of Selkirk's Settlement in North America<sup>5</sup>; Narrative of the Discoveries on the North Coast of America from 1836 to 1839, by Messrs. Dease and T. Simpson<sup>6</sup>; Hearne's Journeys to the Northern Ocean from 1769 to 1772<sup>7</sup>; Rae's Exploration of the Coasts of the Arctic Region<sup>8</sup>; Sir George Simpson's

<sup>1</sup> Published by Seeley, Hatchard, and Nisbett. London. 1845.

<sup>2</sup> Published by Wiley and Putnam. London. 1845.

<sup>3</sup> Published by Murray. London. 1844.

<sup>4</sup> Re-published by Chambers. Edinburgh. 1841.

<sup>5</sup> Published by Murray. London. 1817.

<sup>6</sup> Published by Bentley. London. 1837.

<sup>7</sup> Strahan and Cadell in 1795.

<sup>8</sup> Times and Morning Herald, 1st and 2nd November, 1847.

Overland Journey round the World in 1841-2<sup>o</sup>; several official papers deposited at the Colonial Office, Board of Trade, and Admiralty; the Royal Charter granted to the Hudson's Bay Company by King Charles II., 2nd May, 1670\*; the Royal Licences granted by King George IV., 5th December 1821, and by Queen Victoria, 30th May, 1838, for exclusive trade with the Indians of all the countries in North America to the north and west of the territory of the United States, Upper and Lower Canada, and the territories of the Hudson's Bay Company granted to them by the Royal Charter of 2nd May, 1670\*; the Deed Poll of the Company, which is a covenant between the chief factors and chief traders in America, and the stock holders in England; two letters from the Rev. Wm. Cockran and the Rev. J. Macallum, clergymen of the Church of England, on the state of the Red River settlement in July and August 1848\*; and other documents to which reference is made in this work.

I now beg to submit to your Lordship the important evidence afforded by the statements of these impartial authorities, many of them eye-witnesses of

\* Published by Colburn. 1847.

\* See Appendix.

what they narrate. It is for your Lordship and the public to decide in what manner the Hudson's Bay Company has endeavoured to carry out the objects for which it was incorporated by Charles II.; how far it has merited the additional Royal Licences granted in 1821 and in 1838, for an extension of the exclusive trade with the Indians over certain parts of North America; and what reasonable prospect may be entertained of the effectual execution of the trust now being vested in this ancient Corporation, for the formation of a British Settlement in the Pacific Ocean, by our Most Gracious Sovereign.

I have the honour to subscribe myself,

My LORD,

Your obedient and faithful Servant,

R. M. MARTIN.

4, MORETON VILLAS, KENTISH TOWN.

*N.B.*—The extracts from the “Journal of the Bishop of Montreal, in 1844,” at pp. 22, 23, and 24; and two letters in the Appendix from the Rev J. Cockran, and the Rev. J. Macallum, clergymen of the church of England,—dated from the Red River, 26th July, and 3rd August, 1848,—give a faithful description of the *present* state of the Colony.

#### INDIAN VILLAGE AT THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

(*From the Bishop of Montreal's Journal.*)



#### ERRATA AND ADDENDA.

\*.\* The dots in the Map indicate the forts and principal stations of the Hudson's Bay Company.

P. 51.—Line 2, *for* ‘three,’ *read* ‘four years.’

P. 81.—It should have been stated that Mr. Chief Factor Ogden, on receiving intelligence of the massacre, started from Fort Vancouver with a party, and by his influence with the Cayouses, and presents to the amount of £100, procured the liberation of 65 captives, who would otherwise in all probability have been put to death.

P. 94.—*For* ‘fort Pett,’ *read* ‘fort Pitt.’

P. 107.—*For* ‘five large volumes,’ *read* ‘four large volumes.’

P. 108.—There is a typographical error in the year ‘1848.’

*For* ‘Governor of the Columbia,’ *read* ‘Governor of the new settlement on the ‘Willamette.’

P. 148.—*For* ‘cargo of corn,’ *read* ‘flour.’

*For* ‘has,’ *read* ‘have shown.’

There have been two important omissions:—*FIRST*,—No association or private individual possessed of means, or prepared with any guarantee for the accomplishment of the object, have proposed to colonize the Vancouver's Island. *SECOND*,—Vancouver's Island does not yield to the Hudson's Bay Company, a profit derivable from furs to the value of £300 per annum. There is no motive, therefore, for keeping the island as a hunting station; but there is every inducement to form an agricultural settlement, as they are now excluded from the fertile country south of the 49th parallel of latitude.

# THE HUDSON'S BAY TERRITORIES

AND

## VANCOUVER'S ISLAND, &c.

---

### Part I.

---

#### GEOGRAPHY, PHYSICAL ASPECT, CLIMATE, &c.

---

**GEOGRAPHY.**—The north-west territories of British America, exclusive of Canada, extend from the Pacific Ocean and Vancouver's Island along the parallel of the 49th degree of north latitude, near to the head of Lake Superior, and thence in a north-easterly direction to the coast of Labrador and the Atlantic. The Arctic Ocean forms the northern boundary. The whole region includes the meridians of 55 and 141 degrees of west longitude, excepting a strip of Russian territory on the Pacific Ocean, between 54° and 60° north latitude, following the sinuosities of the coast for ten leagues in breadth, as shown in the accompanying map by Arrowsmith.

Within these limits lies the tract of country granted by Charles II., on the 2nd of May, 1670, under royal charter, to Prince Rupert, the Duke of Albemarle, Earl of Craven, Lord Ashley, and others, who organized the Hudson's Bay Company. This tract by the original charter\* was called 'Rupert's Land;' constituted one of His Majesty's colonies or plantations in America; and was defined as 'all the lauds and territories upon the countries, coasts, and confines of the seas, bays, lakes, rivers, creeks, and sounds, in whatsoever latitude they shall be, that lie

\* See Appendix.



within the entrance of the straits, commonly called Hudson's Straits, that are not already actually possessed by, or granted to any of our subjects, or possessed by the subjects of any other Christian Prince or State.'

No latitudinal or longitudinal boundaries are here expressed. By several Acts of Parliament, especially by 14 Geo. III., cap. 83, the northern boundary of Canada was to be the southern boundary of the eastern portion of the 'territory granted' to the Hudson's Bay Company; and a map, published by Eman Bowen, in 1775, assigns the 49th parallel of north latitude as part of the southern boundary of the Hudson's Bay tract, as far as the Canadian frontier.

No western or northern boundary having been expressed in the Royal Charter of 2nd May, 1670, it has been said that the Pacific and Northern Oceans constitute the limits in these directions; the Hudson's Bay Company, on the 10th June, 1814, sought an opinion respecting the Red River Territory (as shown at p. 47), from the learned counsel, Samuel Romilly, G. S. Holroyd, William Cruise, J. Scarlett, and John Bell, who stated that 'the grant of the soil contained in the charter is good, and that it will include all the country the waters of which run into Hudson's Bay.' This opinion does not define how much more territory may be included in right of the Charter.

In addition to this grant of territory to the Hudson's Bay Company, and exclusive trade over the same, Charles II., in the said charter, with a view 'to the discovery of a new passage into the South Sea\*, and for the finding of some trade for furs, mine-

\* It has been erroneously stated that Charles II. granted a charter to the Hudson's Bay Company, in order to enable them to discover a passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific. This is not the case, as the words of the accompanying Charter show. It was granted not only as an encouragement to endeavour to find a passage into the South Sea, but also to find 'some trade for furs, minerals, and other considerable commodities.' Arctic discovery has, nevertheless, always formed a prominent part of the proceedings of the Company.

Mr. Hearné adverts, in his interesting work, published in 1795, to the monies expended by the Company in prosecuting researches, and to the various attempts made by their officers, Bean, Christopher, Johnston, and Duncan, to find out a north-west passage. In 1719, the Hudson's Bay Company fitted out the *Albany* frigate and the

erals, and other commodities, and to encourage them to proceed *further* in pursuance of their said design, whereof there may probably arise very great advantage to us and to our kingdom,

*Discovery* sloop, to find out the Straits of Anian, and a passage to the northward. These ships were embayed in the ice near Marble Island, and all perished by a lingering miserable death. No intelligence of the vessels, or their crews, reached the Company, or any of their forts, until 1769, and then the remains were discovered by accident.

The Hudson's Bay Company, between 1769 and 1772, sent Mr. S. Hearne from Fort Churchill on three journeys throughout the regions west and north-west of the Fort, to the extent of a thousand miles. Considering the period when these journeys were undertaken, the ignorance which prevailed respecting the topography and climate, the number and dangerous character of the Indian tribes, and the total separation of Mr. Hearne from any other European, the investigations of this enterprising traveller deserve the highest approbation.

Hearne discovered the Lake Athapescow, and explored a large extent of country: he traced the 'far-off Metal River,' since called the 'Copper Mine River,' to its termination in the Arctic Ocean, where the tides were observed, and on whose shores relics of whales were strewed in abundance. Hearne conceived that he had proved the entire impossibility of any direct communication between Hudson's Bay and the Pacific, for the discovery of which, by *H.M. ships*, an Act of Parliament was passed in 1745, offering a reward of £20,000.

The Admiralty concurred in the opinion of Hearne, and, in 1776, the reward was offered to *any* of His Majesty's subjects who should find out, and sail *through*, *any* passage in *any* direction from the Atlantic to the Pacific, north of the 52nd parallel of latitude.

In 1836-7-8-9 the Hudson's Bay Company incurred considerable expense in prosecuting an extensive and successful exploring expedition to the Arctic Ocean, under two of their officers, Messrs. Dease and Simpson, whose valuable researches have been recently published, for which the Geographical Society awarded their gold medal, and Her Majesty's Government a pension of £100 per annum to Mr. Simpson and Mr. Dease. These enterprising travellers advanced, in one season, from the Mackenzie River to Point Barrow, and in another from the Copper Mine River to Boothia Felix, when the region reached, was 68° 43' 39" north latitude, 106° 3' west longitude, magnetic variation, 60° 38' 23" east; the compass was sluggish and uncertain in its movements, requiring to be shaken before it would traverse. The discovery was termed Victoria Land. During the preceding year, the explorers reached 71° 23' 33" north, 156° 20' west; an open sea was seen to the eastward, and a large bay studded with islands, the land dipping to east-south-east for thirty miles. In 1846-47 the Hudson's Bay Company sent out another Arctic expedition, under the command of one of their able officers, Mr. John Rae, for the purpose of exploring and surveying the unknown portion of the north-east angle of the American continent. The expedition consisted of thirteen persons, started from Fort Churchill in July 1846, suffered great hardships, and wintered at a place named Fort Hope, in 66° 32' 16" north, 86° 55' 51" west; variation of the compass, 62° 50' 30" west, dip of the needle, 88° 14'; the thermometer in their snow-covered habitation, was 10° to 12° below zero. After severe privations, and overcoming considerable difficulties, Mr. Rae successfully accomplished the object of the expedition by tracing the coast of America between Lord Mayor's Bay of Sir John Ross, to within eight or ten miles of the

granted, '*for ever hereafter,*' not only *the whole, the entire, and only trade and traffic to and from the territory, limits and places aforesaid,*' but also the whole and '*entire trade and traffic to and from all havens, bays, creeks, rivers, lakes, and seas into which they shall find entrance or passage by water or land out of the territories, limits, or places aforesaid ; and to and with all the natives and people inhabiting, or which shall inhabit within the territories, limits, and places aforesaid ; and to and with all other nations inhabiting any the coasts adjacent to the said territories, limits, and places which are not already possessed as aforesaid, or whereof the sole liberty or privilege of trade and traffic is not granted to any other of our subjects.*'

This grant not only, therefore, gave the Hudson's Bay Company *a large territorial manor in perpetuity,* but it also gave them an exclusive right of trade, for ever, over such adjoining territories as above described.

Mr. Greenhow—after reciting the Royal Charter of 1670—acknowledges, that from thence 'it will be seen that the Hudson's Bay Company possessed, by its Charter, almost sovereign powers

Fury and Hecla Strait (see map) ; thus proving 'Boothia Felix' to be a peninsula\*. The country thus explored was formally declared to be British territory, and, in September 1847, Mr. Rae and his party arrived in safety at York Factory, in Hudson's Bay. This scientific officer of the Company has now, at the request of the Lords of the Admiralty, accompanied Dr. Richardson in search of Sir John Franklin and his gallant companions.

During the researches, journeys, and voyages of Parry, Franklin, Ross, Beechey, Back, &c., the Hudson's Bay Company have spared no exertions or expense to aid Her Majesty's Government and the naval service in the Arctic explorations, which, independent of the expenditure of the Company, have cost Her Majesty's Government, since 1815, nearly half a million sterling, without any territorial or commercial advantage being derived by the nation.

The Hudson's Bay Company have long since demonstrated, that no available route exists by sea between the North Atlantic and North Pacific, and this national expenditure might have been spared, and any further required exploration of these hyperborean regions may well be left in the hands of the Company.

\* See the *Times* and *Morning Herald* of Nov. 1 and 2, 1847, for an unassuming despatch of Mr. Rae to the Governor and Committee of the Hudson's Bay Company, containing an account of his important geographical discoveries, of which an excellent map has been prepared by Mr. Arrowsmith with his accustomed public spirit.

over the vast portion of America drained by streams entering Hudson's Bay.'—(*"Oregon" Proofs and Illustrations*, I. p. 456.)

These latter rights were, however, invaded after the British occupation of Canada, by an associated body terming themselves the North-West Company, between whom and the Hudson's Bay Company a series of direful struggles, attended with great loss of life, injury to the fur trade, and destruction to the Indians, was maintained for years, until, in 1821, an Act of Parliament was passed, under which the Crown granted to the Hudson's Bay Company, and to the three representative agents of the North-West Association in London and Montreal, on 6th December, 1821, a licence of exclusive trade for twenty-one years, in what were termed the 'Indian territories,' that is; over those tracts which might not be included in the grant of Charles II., and also over those tracts which, by mutual consent, were open to the subjects of England, and to those of the United States. The three North-West Association Agents merged into the Hudson's Bay Company; the exclusive trading licence was surrendered in 1838, and, after careful examination and investigation, on 30th May, 1838, the Crown granted, under covenant, another licence for twenty-one years of exclusive trade over the aforesaid Indian and Neutral territories. These licences (which extended 'to those parts in North America beyond the limits of the Charter which the Hudson's Bay Company at present enjoy,' (see Board of Trade letter, 2nd of June, 1837, in Parliamentary Papers of 8th August, 1842,) in nowise invalidated or questioned the rights possessed by the Hudson's Bay Company under the Royal Charter of 2nd May, 1670, which has been recognised by various treaties and Acts of Parliament. From the correspondence of 7th September and 30th October, 1846, laid before Parliament, 10th August, 1848, it would appear that the Crown considered the 'Rocky Mountains' as the eastern boundary of the territory over which the Hudson's Bay Company have the exclusive right of trading with the natives for twenty-one years from 13th May, 1838. Previous to the recent Oregon treaty, the Hudson's Bay Com-

pany had formed settlements on the Columbia River, and some of its servants and retired officers established an agricultural farm at Puget Sound, south of the 49th parallel, and within the present American territories; but the Oregon treaty (see Appendix) expressly guarantees the 'possessory rights' of the Hudson's Bay Company in the American States, and of course thus acknowledges the possessory rights of the Hudson's Bay Company north of the 49th parallel. In the trading licence of 1838 the Crown reserved to itself the right of establishing any colony in the territory over which the licence extended: hence the power now exercised by the Crown of disposing of Vancouver's Island.

**PHYSICAL ASPECT.**—It is difficult to convey an idea of the territories belonging to, as well as those included in the trading licence of, the Hudson's Bay Company. A great portion of them, east of the Rocky Mountains, consists of inland seas, bays, lakes, rivers, swamps, treeless prairies, barren hills and hollows, 'tossed together in a wave-like form, as if the ocean had been suddenly petrified while heaving its huge billows in a tumultuous swell.'—(*T. Simpson's Life and Travels.*) La Hontan has not inaptly called the region north of Lake Superior, the 'fag end of the world.' There are, doubtless, several spots, such as the Red River, adapted in some respects for European settlements; but they are like oases in the desert, few and far between—and totally inapplicable for extended colonization; indeed, at a great many of the posts, not only can no corn be grown, but even the potatoe and other crops are cut off by summer frosts, so that the rearing and preservation of a sufficient quantity of human food is an object of the most anxious solicitude throughout the country. By the concession of part of the Oregon country and the Colombia River to the United States in 1846, we gave up a fertile and temperate region, south of the 49th parallel, capable of yielding abundance of food; and the tract now left in the possession of the Hudson's Bay Company will require great care and industry, to render even the most promising spots productive.

I shall attempt to define the natural divisions of North-West America, beginning with the coast of the Atlantic Ocean. The prevailing features of Labrador from 50° to 60° north latitude, and from 56° to 78° west longitude, are rocks, lakes, swamps, and mountains. The Straits of Belleisle have an 'iron-bound coast,' with several good harbours adjacent, particularly on the coast; but this wild and sterile region is never likely to be used for any other purposes than fishing and fur hunting.

From the coast of Labrador, a ridge of table land runs nearly south-west to the source of the Ottawa river, and divides the waters which flow into the River and Gulf of St. Lawrence, from those which flow into Hudson's Bay, and may be considered the south-eastern boundary of the Hudson's Bay Company's territories. From the Ottawa this ridge (table land, or division of waters) takes a generally west direction till it reaches the Rocky Mountains, in about 115° west longitude, separating the waters of Rainy Lake River, Red River, and Saskatchewan River, which waters flow into Hudson's Bay, from the Mississippi and Missouri, which flow into the Gulf of Mexico. This very slightly elevated feature was formerly considered to represent the boundary between the Hudson's Bay Company and the United States, to the westward of the source of Rainy Lake River. The Treaty of 1818, defined Rainy Lake River, the Lake of the Woods, and the 49th parallel of latitude as far west as Rocky Mountains, as the boundary; and by the recent Treaty, 15th June, 1846, the 49th parallel of latitude has been continued as the boundary west of the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. The Rocky Mountains have their northern extremity in the Arctic Ocean, latitude 70° north, longitude 140° west, and run nearly S.S.E., parallel with the west coast, forming the eastern boundary of the Oregon region, sending off, at different places, spurs and buttresses, and dividing the waters that flow into the Atlantic from those that flow into the Pacific.

At Mount Browne, 16,000, and Mount Hooker, 15,700 feet high, in latitude 52° 30' north, two of the loftiest peaks of the

'Rocky Mountains,' a dividing range of moderate hills runs to the north-east, from whence flows some of the branches of the Saskatchewan, Churchill, or English River, Deer Lake, Winnipeg Lake, and those streams which feed Wollaston Lake, Athabasca Lake, and Slave Lake, and several other lakes. It is, however, difficult to say what waters flow towards Hudson's Bay, or towards the Arctic Sea, as several of the lakes have different outlets, and each lake communicates with another,—the Great Slave Lake, with Lake Athabasca; Lake Athabasca, with Wollaston and Deer Lakes, the latter descending by Churchill River into Hudson's Bay. For instance, the Oungigan or River of Peace descends from a ridge of the Rocky Mountains towards Lake Athabasca, or the Lake of the Mountains; when high it flows into the lake, but when low it receives the lake waters, and flows towards the Great Slave Lake, under the name of the Slave River. Winnipeg, Winnipegos, and Manitoba Lakes, receive the waters of the Saskatchewan, Assiniboine, and Red River, and communicate with Hudson's Bay by the Nelson, and other rivers and conduits.

MacKenzie's River runs northerly in its shallow course from the Rocky Mountains to the Arctic Ocean, in latitude  $69^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $135^{\circ}$  west, but communicates in its progress with the Great Bear and Great Slave Lakes; but, excepting this, the Copper Mine and Back's Rivers, I think the course of all the other rivers and lakes of North-West America, east of the Rocky Mountains, is to the eastward, towards which the whole country dips.

Mr. Greenhow, in his topography of these regions, says, (p. 37)—that the country north of  $50^{\circ}$ , and east of the Rocky Mountains, is 'drained by streams entering Hudson's Bay or the Arctic Sea; the principal are the Red River of the North, the Assiniboine, and the Saskatchewan, all emptying into Lake Winnipeg, which communicates by several channels with Hudson's Bay and the Missinippi, or Churchill River, falling direct into that bay.'

'The Arctic Sea, in nearly the 69th parallel, receives the Great Fish, or Back's River, the Copper Mine, and the Mackenzie;

but the regions through which these rivers pass are generally so level, that it is in many places difficult to trace the limits of the tracts from which the waters flow into the respective streams or basins; they contain numerous lakes, some of them very large, which are nearly all connected with each other, and with Hudson's Bay on the east and the Arctic Sea on the north.'—*History and Geography of Oregon*, p. 37.

Viewing, therefore, the whole of the territories between the Rocky Mountains and Hudson's Bay, north of the 49th parallel, as one region, it may be considered as a series of lakes, rivers, and plains, with a gradual elevation from east to west.

The northern territory, which was very imperfectly explored until the recent journeys of Dease, Simpson, and Rae, from 1837 to 1847, is intersected with lakes, marshes, and rivers to a greater extent than any part of the known globe; and it would seem as if the inner springs of the earth there burst forth. Some parts investigated are truly regions of desolation: vegetation ceases in the latitude of 60° north:—no land is seen capable of cultivation; the whole surface is rugged and uneven, and the open valleys nearly devoid of all vegetable productions. The soil at Churchill Fort (one of the Hudson's Bay Company's Stations, in latitude 59° north) on the shores of the bay, is extremely barren, rocky, dry, and without wood for several miles inland; a few garden vegetables are with difficulty reared. At York Fort, in latitude 57° 2', longitude 93° west, the soil is low and marshy, and equally unproductive; and, though the trees are larger than those inland of Fort Churchill, they are still knotty and dwarfish. The country around the factory, although elevated above the river, is one entire swamp, covered with low stunted pine, and perfectly impenetrable, even in July, when it is infested by clouds of mosquitoes. The land seems to have been thrown up by the sea, and is never thawed during the hottest summer, with the thermometer at 90° to 100° in the shade, more than ten or twelve inches, and then the soil is of the consistence of clammy mud; even in the centre of the factory it is necessary to keep on the



platforms to avoid sinking over the ankles. About Albany Fort, in  $52^{\circ}$  north, and Moose Fort in  $51^{\circ} 28'$ , the climate is more temperate, the soil better, and potatoes and garden produce are reared but with difficulty. Proceeding farther west, the temperature improves, but all around Hudson's Bay, particularly at Fort Churchill, the climate is extremely severe; and from the middle of October to the middle of May, the country is buried under snow. The ice does not break up generally until July, and at York Fort, two degrees south of Churchill, the thermometer in January has been at  $50^{\circ}$  below zero. Even in rooms at the factory, where a fire is perpetually kept up, brandy freezes into a solid substance: the rivers and lakes, ten to twelve feet deep, are frozen to the bottom, and the Hudson's Bay Company's European servants are obliged to observe the greatest caution against the effects of the cold air, which is frequently filled with small particles of angular ice, and when driven by the wind against the face or hands, raises the skin in white blisters, which break out in thin watery issues. As soon as a room is thoroughly heated, and the embers burnt down, the top of the chimney is closed so as to exclude the air, yet the walls of the apartments are found covered with ice two to three inches thick\*. The Europeans in the service of the Hudson's Bay Company, notwithstanding their precautions, and the use of a large quantity of woollens and furs, are frequently frost bitten, and many of the natives fall victims to the severity of the climate. The sun is often obscured for weeks by thick fogs, which are caused by watery vapours ascending from the sea, which, being condensed by cold, hang all around the coast, and extend inland to a con-

\* In the *Quarterly Review*, No. xlix. vol. xxv., 1821, Sir John Barrow adverts to this remarkable occurrence on board Captain Parry's ships, *Hecla* and *Griper*:—"The month of March set in mildly (at their retreat in Winter Harbour) so that the solid ice, which for some time had lined the ships' sides, began to melt. It therefore became necessary to scrape off this coating of ice, on which occasion Captain Parry observes—'It will, perhaps, be scarcely credited, that we this day (8th March) removed above one hundred buckets full, each containing from five to six gallons, being the accumulation which had taken place in an interval of less than four weeks; and this immense quantity was the produce chiefly of the men's breath and of the steam of their victuals during meals.'"

siderable distance. The 'Mock Suns' and Moons, called Parahelia and Paraselene, appear very frequently in the coldest months. The temperature of the air is subject to the most capricious variations; rain sometimes falls abundantly with a serene sky, or the sun will burst forth in the midst of the heaviest showers. Such is the region in which several of the Hudson's Bay Company's establishments are situated, and which could not be maintained but for the possession of some more temperate regions, from whence food is procurable.

Hudson's Bay, discovered by John Hudson in 1610, is about 900 miles in length, by 600 at its greatest breadth, with a surrounding coast of 3000 miles, between the parallels of  $51^{\circ}$  and  $65^{\circ}$  north latitude. The coasts are generally high, rocky, rugged, and sometimes precipitous. The bay is navigable for a few months in summer, but for the greater part of the remainder of the year is filled up with fields of ice. The navigation, when open, is extremely dangerous, as it contains many shoals, rocks, sand banks, and islands; even during the summer icebergs are seen in the straits towards which a ship is drifted by a squall or current, rendering it very hazardous for the most skilful seamen. The transitions of the thermometer in summer are from  $100^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  in two days, and the torrents of rain are surprising: whether in winter or summer, the climate is horrible; the range of the thermometer throughout the year is  $140^{\circ}$ . The sea is entered by Hudson's strait, which is about 500 miles long, with a varying breadth, and with an intricate navigation through several islands, viz.: Charles, Salisbury, Nottingham, Mansfield, and Southampton. The principal bays and inlets in this great inland sea, are, James's Bay, in the south-east, which is 240 miles deep by 140 wide; Button's Bay, and Port Nelson, on the western coast; Chesterfield Inlet on the north-west, which, after stretching far into the interior, terminates in a fresh water lake; Roe's Welcome, a deep strait on the north coast, and also Repulse Bay.

We may now examine the country between Hudson's Bay and the Rocky Mountains, commencing with the lakes and

rivers. The Great Bear Lake, the most northerly, is 150 miles in diameter, and communicates by Lake Martin with the Great Slave Lake, which is estimated at 260 miles from east to west, and 30 from north to south. Captain Back considers it as large as Lake Michigan; its soundings are from 40 to 60 fathoms. The north side of the lake is an entire jumble of rocks and hills; the south is level, not a hill or stone to be found. The Great Slave River joins this lake to that of Athabasca, which is 180 miles long and 15 broad,—receives the Peace, Athabasca, and Stone Rivers; the latter river forms the channel which conveys a portion of the waters of the Wollaston Lake (situated on table land) into Athabasca Lake; another portion of the waters of Wollaston Lake flows in a contrary direction through Deer Lake and River into the Missinippi, Churchill, or English River, which forms several smaller lakes, and finally disembogues into Hudson's Bay, at Fort Churchill, in latitude  $55^{\circ} 45'$  north, longitude  $94^{\circ} 25'$  west.

Lake Winnipeg, in latitude  $50^{\circ} 20'$  to  $53^{\circ} 45'$  north, is 240 miles long, and from 5 to 50 broad. It receives the River Saskatchewan, as it flows from the Rocky Mountains and northern ridge; also the Red and Assiniboine Rivers, and discharges itself into Hudson's Bay by the Nelson and other rivers. Winnipegos and Manitoba are branch or tributary lakes to Winnipeg.

That the trend of the land, and the dip, is towards Hudson's Bay and the eastward, is evident from the course of the Red River, which rises in about the parallel of  $46^{\circ}$ ; flows to the northward across the American boundary parallel of  $49^{\circ}$ ; joins the Assiniboine, or Nadawosis River, at Fort Garry, in  $50^{\circ}$  north latitude, and then disembogues into the south-western part of Lake Winnipeg, which, as before stated, discharges into Hudson's Bay.

The Moose River, which flows from the dividing ridge of highlands, which separates the Hudson's Bay territories from Canada, runs for 230 miles in a north-east direction, and has its *embouche* in James's Bay, lat.  $51^{\circ} 10'$  north, long.  $81^{\circ}$  west.

The country between the sources of the Assiniboine, in  $51\frac{1}{4}$

north, and the Red River, is almost a continued plain, the soil of sand and gravel, with a slight intermixture of earth, which produces a short grass, but trees are rare. The country around the southern part of Lake Winipeg is well wooded and watered, and abounds at seasons with herds of buffalo and deer ; so also contiguous to the Winipegos Lake and Swan River, and along the route from Carlton to Isle la Crosse Forts in the 55th parallel. The northern part of Lake Winipeg is composed of banks of naked black and grey rock. Farther north occasionally greener spots are to be met with: some of the islands in the Great Slave Lake are clothed with tall poplars, birch, and pines, and well stocked with deer. Near the portage La Loche is a precipice upwards of 100 feet above the plain, from whence, according to Mackenzie, there is a ' ravishing prospect : '—the Swan (Pelican or Clear Water) River meanders for thirty miles through a valley about three miles in breadth, confined by two lofty ridges of equal height, displaying a delightful intermixture of wood and lawn. Some parts of the inclining heights are covered with stately forests, relieved by verdant promontories, where the elk and buffalo enjoy delicious pasturage.

The route from the Red River settlement (Fort Garry) to Fort Chipewyan, on Lake Athabasca, was traversed in December 1836, by Mr. Thomas Simpson, by the following stages, in a very short space of time :—

	Miles.	Days.
Fort Garry (Red River) to Fort Pelly.....	394	in 15
Fort Pelly to Fort Carlton .....	276	„ 12
Carlton to Isle à la Crosse.....	236	„ 7
Isle à la Crosse to Fort Chipewyan .....	371	„ 12
Total.....	1277	in 46

These, and other forts and stations, are necessarily wide apart, and in situations favourable to water communications, and to procuring animal, or, if possible, vegetable food.

The aspect of part of the country in which these forts are constructed, is thus noted by Mr. Simpson:—*Fort Garry*, the principal station of the Red River Settlement, is situated at the forks of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers, about fifty miles from Lake Winnipeg, and is environed by plains; proceeding north-west the country is studded with a few copses of poplar and dwarf oak; but the greater part having been swept by the running fires in 1835 (so frequent and terrible in the prairies), presented a blackened and dismal aspect. There were a number of small natural mounds on which lay fragments of limestone, the great basis of the plain region, and quantities of little shells were strewn about in every direction.

The soil and climate about Manitoba, or 'Evil Spirit' Lake, is similar to that of the Red River. At Winnipegos Lake the oak region terminates; but the shores are clothed with elm, poplar, and a few ash, birch, and pine-trees. The water in this lake is brackish in summer. At Duck Bay the first wood of pines was seen. The route from thence to Fort Pelly, south-west, lies through swampy meadows, alternating with woods of poplar, fringed with willow, and a few straggling clumps of pine in the neighbourhood of the Swan River and Duck Mountain, with its 'rude and impassable heights.' Thence west to north lie the Porcupine Hills, wooded to the very summit. Thunder Hills are about two miles in breadth, steep; and beyond them to the northward is Fort Pelly, in  $51^{\circ} 45' 20''$  north latitude— $102^{\circ} 5'$  west, near the bank of the Assiniboine River. The track thence to Fort Carlton, lies through gently undulating eminences along the wooded banks of the tortuous Assiniboine, thence due west, leaving the Assiniboine far to the south, over a hilly country, tolerably wooded, and abounding in small lakes and swamps to the west end of Stoney Lake, through a country consisting of narrow plains, studded with clumps of poplar, interspersed with little lakes and swamps; a great part of this district had been recently overrun by fire. Changing the course from west to west south-west, the traveller reaches the immense prairies of the

Saskatchewan River, of which entire tracts are frequently bared by fire to the very soil. The cold in these plains in winter, with the wind from the westward, is terrific; there is not a shrub or even a blade of grass to break the force of the blast, whose temperature is at least 40° below zero. The only exposed part of the traveller, the eye-lashes, becomes speedily covered with a heavy crop of icicles, which the half-frozen fingers have a difficulty in removing. These plains in summer are frequented by the Indians as hunting grounds. The heat in these wild plains is as unbearable in summer as is the cold in winter. Throughout this country, says Sir G. Simpson, every thing is in unparalleled extremes. Cold and excessive heat,—long droughts balanced by drenching rain and destructive hail (sometimes  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches in circumference). At one period both whites and natives are living in wasteful abundance on venison, buffalo, fish, and game—at others reduced to the last degree of hunger, often passing several days without food. In 1820, when wintering at Athabasca Lake, Sir George Simpson says, he was for three days and nights without a morsel of food. Frequently hundreds of fine buffaloes are killed for the tongues alone. On one occasion Sir G. Simpson saw several thousand buffaloes putrifying the air for miles around. Unsheltered plains extend far to the south, to the ridges in latitude 49°, whence the Missouri descends. One of the prairies of the Saskatchewan crossed by Mr. Simpson, was fourteen miles wide, and only a few willows were thinly scattered on its surface. The country south of the Saskatchewan towards Assiniboine, has in various places lakes as salt as the Atlantic Ocean. As this region, which extends to the Rocky Mountains, has been erroneously considered adapted for European colonization, the following extract from Mr. Thomas Simpson's Journal may help to dispel the illusion. "Christmas Day, Sunday, the 25th: On shaking off our slumbers this glad morning, a troop of wolves were 'baying the moon,' as she rode in a cloudless sky. The country before us being intricate, we could not start till daylight; and, when we sallied forth on our day's march, the weather had

moderated. About two miles from our resting-place, we passed over a round hill, and stood awhile on its summit to enjoy the boundless prospect. From west to south stretched a vast plain, separated from another, of which we had a bird's-eye glimpse to the north-east, by the broad belt of woods which we had been skirting along; while, before us, in our line of march, lay outspread a seemingly endless tract of open underwood, varied by gently swelling eminences. For seven miles our route led west-north-west, through thickets and over hillocks; it then changed to west for fourteen miles, through a more open country, consisting of rising grounds, or "*côteaus*," with bare ridges, and sides clothed with dwarf poplar and brushwood; while here and there, in the hollows, we crossed large ponds, scarcely deserving, on this continent, the title of lakes. They have no outlet; and *on cutting through the ice for water, we generally found it putrid: such, however, is its scarcity in that level country, that we were often fain to use it when most nauseous, taking the precaution of imbibing it through snow, which purifies it in some slight degree.* We now turned west-south-west for eight miles, keeping along a broad and rather winding ridge, which appeared to furnish the buffalo with a regular road of ingress to the woods. Several tracks of moose-deer were also seen during the day. After sunset, we took up our quarters in a small clump of poplars. The whole country having been ravaged by fire, we could not find dry grass, as usual, for our beds, and spread our Christmas couch on willow branches; rough indeed, but rendered smooth to us by health and exercise."

Mr. Robert Greenhow, in his History of California, Oregon, and other territories on the north-west coast of America, before referred to, speaking of the countries in the occupation of the Hudson's Bay Company with respect to colonization, says, p. 37:—"North of the 50° parallel, the climate is more moist; but its extreme coldness renders the country of *little value for agriculture*. The only part at which any settlement has been attempted, is that of the Red River, where, about 5000 persons,

principally half-breeds and Indians, have been established by the Hudson's Bay Company; *but the success of the enterprise is yet doubtful.* And, again, at page 397, the author says:—'With regard to colonization it has been already said, that a very small proportion of the Hudson Bay Company's territories is capable of being rendered productive by cultivation.' Mr. Greenhow then alludes to the Red River settlement, and the unfortunate results of the first attempts to colonize it, and adds:—'The land may be considered fertile when compared with other parts of the continent situate far to the north; it is, however, deficient in wood, and notwithstanding *all the advantages held out by the Hudson's Bay Company, there is no probability it will ever rise to importance in any way*, and, least of all, as a check to incursions from the United States, which seems to be one of the principal objects proposed by its founders.'

Several of the Hudson's Bay Company's forts are situated in the country N.W. of the Red River. *Fort Pelly* is a compact, well-ordered post on the route from Fort Garry, on the Red River, to Fort Carlton. It is sheltered on the north by a range of woods, and has the Assiniboine River in front; the cold in December is terrific, sometimes—44°, equal to 76 degrees of frost.

Carlton Fort is situated on the south side of the Saskatchewan River, and is defended by high palisades, and a gallery surrounding the whole square, planted with wall pieces, into which, however, the Indians fired several times during the summer of 1835. Provisions were unusually scarce, when visited by Mr. T. Simpson in 1836, the great fires in autumn having driven the buffalo to a distance. The route to Fort La Crosse lay first through an open country consisting of low, round, grassy hills, interspersed with clumps of poplar, occasionally of pines, and with many small lakes to the boundary of the pine forest, in latitude 53° 30' north; thence hills, lakes, lakelets and brooks, to a hilly tract of fourteen miles in extent, which divides the waters that flow towards the Saskatchewan and Churchill Rivers. From Green Lake to Beaver River is swampy and wooded; and



thence to Long Lake chain are pine woods. Fort La Crosse, in  $107^{\circ} 54' 30''$  west on the border of the lake, is neat and compact; the country around low and swampy. At the portage la Loche, north of Fort Crosse, the hills are a thousand feet in height, steep, and command a fine view of the Clear water river, and its picturesque valley; thence to the confluence with the Athabasca River, whose broad bosom is studded with numerous islands that give it a lake-like appearance.

At Fort Chipewyan, latitude  $58^{\circ} 43' 38''$  north, longitude  $111^{\circ} 18' 32''$  west, the surface consists of rocks and swamps, and the climate precludes all prospect of rearing farm produce; even potatoes have to be brought down from Fish River; and when the coarse grass, cut in the swamps for the use of the few horses and oxen required for drawing fire-wood to the fort, fails, fish from the Athabasca river is the only provender obtainable for the cattle. Fort Edmonton is situated on the northern branch of the Saskatchewan River, in lat.  $53^{\circ} 45' N.$  long.  $113^{\circ} 10' W.$ , and was visited by Sir G. Simpson in his progress from the Red River to the Columbia and Fort Vancouver. The fort is of an hexagonal form, well built, with high pickets and bastions, and battle-mented gateways; it is on an almost perpendicular height commanding the river. The fort is painted inside and out with devices to suit the taste of the savages who frequent it. Over the gateways are a fantastic pair of vanes, and the ceilings and walls of the hall present gaudy colours and fantastic sculptures, which the Indians admire. The buildings are smeared with red earth; the savages are awed by so much finery, and respect what appears to them grand structures.

The settlement on the Red River, distant from Montreal, by the Ottawa River, about 1800 miles, in latitude  $50^{\circ}$  north, longitude  $97^{\circ}$  west, is elevated 800 feet above the sea, in a level country, contiguous to the wooded borders of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers, along which the settlement extends for fifty miles. The soil is comparatively fertile, and the climate salubrious, but summer frosts, generated by undrained marshes,

sometimes blast the hopes of the husbandman. The Hudson's Bay Company, by the introduction, at a great expense, of rams and other stock, have improved the breed of domestic animals, which are now abundant: wheat, barley, oats, maize, potatoes, and hops thrive; flax and hemp are poor and stunted. The river banks are cultivated for half a mile inland, but the back level country remains in its natural state, and furnishes a coarse hay for the settlers' stock during the long and severe winter, which lasts from November to April, or May, when Lake Winipeg is unfrozen, and the river navigation to Hudson's Bay commences, *viâ* Norway House entrepôt, at the northern extremity of the lake.

The population is in number about 6000, consisting of Europeans, half-breeds, and Indians. The two principal churches, the Protestant and Roman Catholic, the Gaol, the Hudson's Bay Company's chief buildings, the residence of the Roman Catholic Bishop, and the houses of some retired officers of the fur trade, are built of stone, which has to be brought from a distance; but the houses of the settlers are built of wood, white-washed or painted externally.

'A great abundance of English goods is imported, both by the Hudson's Bay Company and by individuals, in the Company's annual ships to York Factory; and disposed of in the colony at moderate prices.'—(*Mr. T. Simpson.*) There are fifteen wind and three water-mills to grind the wheat, and prepare the malt of the settlers. The Hudson's Bay Company have long endeavoured by rewards and arguments to excite an exportation of tallow, hides, wool, &c. to England; but the bulky nature of the exports, the long and dangerous navigation to Hudson's Bay, and the habits of the half-bred race, who form the mass of the people, and generally prefer chasing the buffalo to agriculture or regular industry, have rendered their efforts ineffectual.

Lord Selkirk, with whom the Red River Settlement originated, first put forth his views on colonization, in 1802; his object being to prevent the Highlanders migrating to countries not under the

British flag. The Hudson's Bay Company, to promote the laudable object, made a large grant of land to his Lordship on the Red River, and gave him all the aid in their power, to enable him to form a Scotch Colony. Several settlers were sent out from Scotland, and in 1813, the settlers were about 100 in number, —in 1814, about 200; and in 1815, about 300. The hostility evinced by the North-West Company,—their determination to destroy the settlement—by fair or by foul means,—the murder of Governor Semple and more than twenty of the Colonists, on the 19th June, 1816; and the expulsion of many of the settlers, caused great distress, and for a time ruined the place. Lord Selkirk died in 1820, since which period no emigrants have been sent from Europe. Under the auspices of the Company, the population now consists of 6000, notwithstanding the migrations towards the Columbia and across the frontier. Generally speaking, the Canadians, who are Romanists, occupy the Assiniboine and upper section of the Red River; and the Europeans and Indians, who are mostly Protestants, the lower section of the Red River; there is therefore but little intermingling of sects. The Roman Catholic Bishop and three Priests receive a gratuity annually from the Hudson's Bay Company. The Protestants have two Clergymen; one is paid by the Hudson's Bay Company, and the other by the Church Missionary Society. There are six principal schools for the ordinary branches of plain education; the Roman Catholics have also seminaries for elementary instruction, and the bishop superintends a school of industry, where young females are taught to weave wool into cloth.

The 'Red River Academy' is a large and flourishing establishment, kept by Mr. and Mrs. Macallum, for the sons and daughters of gentlemen in the service of the Hudson's Bay Company. Land is granted to the settlers at 7*s.* 6*d.* per acre; there is no restriction but in the purchase or sale of furs and spirits, and there is only a slight import duty on all other commodities, the proceeds of which duty are received by the municipality of Assiniboia.

The Colony is governed by a corporation called the Council of

Assiniboia, which, in virtue of the Royal Charter of 1670, exercises judicial as well as legislative authority, under an able Recorder.

The currency is one of the best established in any colony. It consists, with the addition of silver and copper coin, of notes issued by the Hudson's Bay Company, which are payable at York factory by bills on the Company in England. This circulation is absolutely essential; gold or silver would soon be hoarded, melted, or lost; and a note issued by the Government of the place, receivable in payments, of acknowledged exchangeable value, devoid of fluctuation in exchanges, and convertible, without loss or risk, into cash in England, is an advantageous monetary circulation for any settlement, and not a grievance or subject of complaint. Commodities to the full value of the notes can always be obtained at New York, Montreal, &c.

The description given by the Bishop of Montreal of the actual state of the Red River Settlement, visited by his Lordship in 1844, is worthy of attention. His Lordship says:—'The whole population of the Red River Settlement, according to a census with which I was obligingly furnished, is 5,143: of which number, 2,798 are Roman Catholics, and 2,345 are Protestants. No Protestant worship, except that of the Church of England, has ever been established among the people. The heads of families are 870; of whom 571 are Indians or half-breeds, natives of the territory; 152 Canadians; 61 Orkneymen; 49 Scotchmen; 22 Englishmen; 5 Irishmen, and 2 Swiss. Wales, Italy, Norway, Denmark, Germany, Poland, and the United States of America, have each contributed one to the list. There is also one Esquimaux Indian. There are 730 dwelling-houses, 1,219 barns or stables, 18 windmills, and 1 watermill. From the level character of the country, it may be conceived there is not much facility for the operations of the latter kind of construction. There are 182 horses, 749 mares, 107 bulls, 2,207 cows, 1,580 calves, 1,976 pigs, and 3,569 sheep. These particulars were taken in March 1843. The soil, which is alluvial, is beyond example rich and productive, and withal so easily worked, that, although it does not quite come up

to the description of the happy islands—*reddit ubi Cererem tellus inarata quotannis*—there is an instance, I was assured, of a farm, in which the owner, with comparatively slight labour in the preparatory processes, had taken a wheat crop out of the same land for eighteen successive years—never changing the crop, never manuring the land, and never suffering it to lie fallow; and that the crop was abundant to the last. And with respect to pasture and hay, they are to be had *ad libitum*, as Nature gives them in the open plains. *The Company dispose of their land upon liberal terms, with a frontage along the river, and I think the uniform depth of a mile,*—with an understanding that, till further arrangements take place, another mile is at the disposal of the owner, for any benefits which he can derive from it. I speak from memory. It is only a small portion of the farms, next the river, that is ever seen enclosed. *The people revel in abundance;* but it is all for home consumption: they have no outlet, no market for their produce. The liberality of the Company is also evinced in their permitting private traders to import goods in the Company's ships, although they, the Company, have stores of their own within the forts,—in which articles of the same description are for sale. All these articles are brought across from Hudson's Bay, a distance of several hundred miles, in boats; and these boats are drawn across the different portages upon rollers, or, in some places, carried upon waggon. Hence, those articles which are of a heavy description, are charged at a price seemingly out of all proportion to that of many others, which may be obtained at a moderate rate. A common grinding-stone is sold for twenty shillings sterling. The Company, who by their Charter have the privilege of issuing money, transact all their pecuniary concerns in British sterling, which differs considerably, as is well known, from the currency received in the North American colonies of the Crown. Their issue of paper is in three denominations, the highest of which is one pound; and the three are distinguished from each other, for the convenience of the natives by the different colours of the ink: red, blue, and black. The

boat has been now substituted for the canoe, upon all the lines of route on which the operations of the Company are regularly conducted, except on that which leads into Canada. The country in this direction is not of such a nature as to admit of introducing the roller or the waggon upon the portages. At the Red River, and on Lake Superior, there may be seen, in the service of the Company, small-decked sailing vessels, which ply between the ports. The number of bark and wooden canoes, kept for one purpose or other by the inhabitants of the Red River, is 410. In the palmy days of the North-west Company, when the peltries, now sent home by Hudson's Bay, were taken down to be shipped at Montreal, the brigades of canoes amounted sometimes to forty in the season. The name of brigade is still given to the two or three loaded canoes which start yearly from La Chine for the Red River; but the voyageur's occupation is almost gone.'—(*Bishop of Montreal's Journal*, p. 92 to 1092. Published by Seeley, Hatchard, & Nisbett, in 1845.)

The Bishop of Montreal says of the Red River Settlement, that 'it affords a wonderfully striking example of good brought by the hand of God out of evil.' His lordship thus describes the churches there:—'Along the strip of settlement which occupies, with interruptions, the opposite sides of the river, the four English churches are situated. The Indian church is about thirteen miles below the lower church at the rapids; this again is about six from the middle church; and the middle church about seven from the upper. The Indian church is a wooden building, painted white, fifty feet or upwards in length, with a cupola over the entrance. It has square-topped windows, which, so far, give it an unecclesiastical appearance. The lower church is also of wood, and of the length of fifty feet. The middle church, which is not quite completed, and which has been built by the unaided exertions of the congregation, is an edifice of stone, sixty feet long. The upper church, which is also of stone, is ten feet longer, and will accommodate 500 persons. About 400, upon one occasion, met me there. It contains some respectable mural monuments;

among others, one which was put up in memory of Mrs. Jones, wife of the gentleman who long laboured as a missionary of the society, and is affectionately remembered upon the spot. None of the churches have any sort of architectural pretensions, but the two stone churches are creditable-looking buildings.'—(Pages 79 to 81.)

In another passage of his journal the Bishop conveys an impression of the state of society at the Hudson's Bay Company's forts at the Red River, and shews the progress of the settlement. 'I had, at the forts, the command of horses for my daily movements, and every accommodation afforded to me within, and every facility abroad, which I could require. At the Lower Fort I was the guest of Mr. and Mrs. Finlayson, who were in temporary occupation, being *en route* for La Chine, where Mr. Finlayson had been appointed to the charge of the dépôt. He had just retired from the appointment of Governor of Assiniboia, for so the chief factor is styled—in an instrument with the Company's seal attached to it—who has charge within the Red River Colony in the territory. He was succeeded by Mr. Christie, who had just taken possession of the Upper Fort, where the residence of the Governor is made. Mrs. Finlayson, a lady from England, is sister to Lady Simpson, and cousin to Sir George. Mr. and Mrs. Christie have a daughter, who had just returned from England, where she had passed some years in completing her education. Mr. Thom, the Recorder of the territory, an exceedingly able man, possessing a varied range of information, and deeply engaged, latterly, in biblical studies, has apartments, with his lady and children, within the Lower Fort. There are scattered about the settlement several respectable retired factors or traders of the Company, of whom Mr. Bird is one; some married to European, more to native wives. What I have here stated may give an idea of the society at the Red River. Although the style of the establishments at the forts is exceedingly plain, and the extreme difficulty of transport, as well as the isolated character and remote situation of the place itself, cause a variety of articles

to be dispensed with to which some of the inmates—Mrs. Finlayson, for example—have been elsewhere accustomed, yet there is far from a deficiency there to be witnessed, either of comforts or of habits of refinement.’—(Pages 89 to 92.)

These impartial statements convey a lucid view of the actual condition of affairs at this distant and almost isolated British settlement, on which no care or expense has been spared by the Hudson’s Bay Company to render it a happy and prosperous establishment. Its communications with England—are for goods *via* Hudson’s Bay—during the summer season, and for personal travelling and letters, *via* Montreal, from which the Red River is distant 1800 miles. The Company have, along this line, about ten stockaded posts. The Bishop of Montreal traversed the distance in thirty-eight days.

We may now proceed to examine the Pacific Coast and the Rocky Mountains, whose highest ridges are in the parallels of 52° to 53°, about 8500 feet. Some peaks rise to 15 and 16,000 feet, but the general range is 4000 to 6000 feet, diminishing in height towards the north. This granitic mountain chain is from 50 to 100 miles wide. The country termed New Caledonia, between the Rocky Mountains and Cascade Mountains, near the coast of the Pacific, is well watered, undulating in bold swells, with occasional plains and copses, and an abundance of forest trees, of which the cedar, fir, and hemlock, grow to a prodigious size.

In New Caledonia, the Hudson’s Bay Company have several stations, and also in the adjacent country. Fort Alexandria, in 52° 30′ north, is the residence of one of the Company’s chief traders, and here the navigation of Frazer’s River is begun by the northern brigade on their way to the north. A small open space is cleared for a few cattle, but the rest of the country is covered with a dense forest. Fort Thompson, on the Kamloop’s river, is in 50° 38′ north, and 120° 7′ 10″ west. Frazer’s, Babine’s, and McLeod’s Forts, are on the lakes of the same names. Fort St. James, on Stuart’s Lake, was the residence of Chief Factor Ogden, who had charge of the New Caledonia Department.



Frazer's River flows through New Caledonia, but is not navigated below Fort Thompson, owing to its dangerous falls. The distances from Fort Thompson to Fort Alexandria by land is 150 miles, and thence to Fort James 120. Commodore Wilkes says that the climate of this region is unfavourable to agriculture, in consequence of its being situated between the two ranges of mountains, viz. the Rocky Mountains on the east, and the Cascade Mountains (of the coast) on the west, both of which ranges are constantly covered with snow, and in the plains or villages snow lies from November to May six feet deep. The Commodore adds, 'there are many spots of fertile land along the rivers, but the early frosts are a great obstacle to agriculture. At St. James, Babine, and Frazer's Forts only potatoes and turnips can be cultivated.'

Frazer's River has its embouche six miles to the north of the 49th parallel, which defines the United States' boundary. It is about a mile wide, the country around low, with a rich alluvial soil. Fort Langley is 20 miles from the mouth.

Mr. Greenhow says (p. 29) that, 'the territory north of the 49th parallel, and north-west of that drained by the Colombia River (New Caledonia), is a sterile land of snow-clad mountains, tortuous rivers, and lakes frozen over more than two-thirds of the year, presenting scarcely a single spot in which any of the vegetables used as food by civilized people can be produced.'

Sir George Simpson made a journey of 2000 miles in 47 days from the Red River *via* Fort Edmonton to Fort Colville in 1841. He crossed the Rocky Mountains at the confluence of two of the sources of the Saskatchewan and Colombia, near Fort Kotanie, at an elevation of 8000 feet above the sea, with mountains rising about half that altitude around. The descending country to the Kotanie River was rugged and boggy, with thick and tangled forests, craggy peaks and dreary vales, here and there hills of parched clay,—where every shrub and blade of grass was brown and sapless, as if newly swept by the blast of a sirocco; with occasional prairies and open swards, interspersed with gloomy woods or burning pine forests. In one place a valley was seen

thirty miles long by six wide without a tree, and environed by mountains. The natives of these regions were generally in a wretched condition.

The coast abounds with harbours, inlets, and islands, of which latter, that called Vancouver, or Quadra (to which I shall presently advert), is the largest and the most important to Great Britain, from its position at the termination of the United States' boundary, in the 49th parallel of latitude, and from its fine harbours, there being no haven between the Straits of Juan de Fuca and San Francisco, in California. The north-western Archipelago, which lies north of Vancouver's Island, belongs partly to England and partly to Russia. The islands within the British dominions are of various sizes; the largest, named 'Queen Charlotte's Island,' is somewhat of a triangular form, lying nearly north and south, the south point in the parallel of 52°. The superficial area is less than that of Vancouver's Island: it has several good harbours, *viz.*, on the north coast, Port Estrada, near Sandy Point, and Croft's Sound, a little farther west. On the east side, Skitekis, in 53° 20' north latitude; Cumashawa, near 53° north; and Port Sturges, farther south. On the west, or Pacific coast, Magee's Sound, in 52° 1' north latitude; and Port Ingram, near the north-west extremity of the island. The country around some of these harbours, especially Port Estrada, (Hancock's River), and Magee's Sound, is said by the Americans to be fertile, and the climate comparatively mild.

The Princess Royal Islands lie nearer to the main land, between the parallels of 51° and 54° north latitude. Of the interior of the whole of these islands, little or nothing is known; the largest are traversed by mountain ridges in the direction of their greatest length from south-east to north-west. Greenhow says, that, probably, as regards their interior, they are rocky and barren. The adjacent coast is of very irregular outline, with numerous bays, inlets, tortuous channels, forming a labyrinth of passages. Simpson's River, on our north-west boundary, has a deep inlet, and communicates with Babine Lake, where the Hudson's Bay Company have a fort. The Company have also

an establishment on the north coast of Pitt's Islands, in the north-western Archipelago.

The north-west coast and interior north of the parallel of 55°, is described as extremely rugged; lofty mountains, covered with snow, rise abruptly from the ocean; more inland, the whole region consists of Alpine masses, thrown together in the wildest confusion, so that a level site for a fort can hardly be found within any reasonable distance of a stream or lake. It is a land of rocks, as difficult of access as it is impracticable in itself, except at the very margin of the sea. Most of the streams to the north of the Frazer's River, are mere torrents fed by melting snow in summer, and in winter by the unceasing deluges of this dismal climate; these streams form deep valleys in the precipitous heights of every form and magnitude in their progress to the ocean. Hence the term 'Cascade Mountains,' given to the coast line north of Vancouver's Island. The Company hold under lease from Russia, a fort on the Stikine or Pelly's River, where the climate and country are alike miserable in the extreme, and their effects are increased by the putridity and filth of the adjacent Indian village. At this fort, in April 1842, the gentleman in charge was shot in a scuffle, and 2000 savages encamped around were preparing to rifle the fort, when, fortunately, Sir G. Simpson arrived in a Russian steamer. Taco Fort, under Dr. Kennedy, an assistant, and 22 men, is still farther northward on the coast, surrounded by 4000 savages, warlike and ferocious, who at first captured Dr. Kennedy and his assistant, and required for their ransom four blankets. The fort is now strong. Good deer skins are obtained here.

Fort M'Loughlin, in latitude 25° 5' N., on the north-west coast, near Millbank Sound, was formed in 1837, on one of the most rugged spots imaginable. By great and unwearied exertions for several years in blasting, levelling, and gravelling, the Company's officers have made a strong fort on a rock capable of holding out with 20 men, against all the Indians of the coast. An enclosed surface of three acres has been covered with sea-weed and made into a garden, producing potatoes, carrots, turnips, cabbages, &c.

A village of 500 of the Ballobola Indians, is close to the fort; and at first these savages were dangerous and troublesome, but they are now more subdued.

Previous to an investigation of other branches of the subject, it will be advisable to examine the proceedings of the Russian American Fur Company, whose territory includes all the Pacific coast and islands, north of  $54^{\circ} 40'$ , and the whole of the continent west of  $141^{\circ}$ , the Asiatic coast of the Pacific north of  $51^{\circ}$ , the islands of the Kurile group to the south point, in  $45^{\circ} 50'$ . This extensive territory has been granted to a Russian American Fur Company, which was established under charter from the Emperor Paul, 8th July, 1799, with power to occupy and bring, under the dominion of Russia, all territories north or south of  $55^{\circ}$ , not previously occupied and placed under subjection by another nation. The Russian Company and Hudson's Bay Company were brought into collision, and the latter experienced considerable loss in their endeavours to prevent British territory and the adjacent regions being occupied by the Muscovites. In 1834, the Hudson's Bay Company expended several thousand pounds in an expedition to establish trading stations on the large river Stikine, in  $56^{\circ} 20'$ . The Russians resented by force this procedure of the Company, although England claimed the privilege of navigating the rivers flowing from the interior of the Continent to the Pacific, across the line of boundary established under the treaty of 1825. The British Government required redress for this infraction of the treaty; and after negotiation between the two Governments, and the two chartered Companies, it was agreed in 1839, that from 1st June, 1840, the Hudson's Bay Company should enjoy for ten years the exclusive use of the continent assigned to Russia, by Mr. Canning in 1825, and extending from  $54^{\circ} 40'$  north, to Cape Spenser, near  $58^{\circ}$  north, in consideration of the annual payment of 2,000 otter skins to the Russian American Company, whose head quarters are at Sitka. The charter of the Russian Company was renewed in 1839, when they had 36 hunting and fishing establishments. Their stock bears a high premium.

Sitka, or New Archangel, founded in 1805, is a military station and the chief post of the Russian Fur Company. The fort mounts 16 short eighteen, and 42 long nine pounders, and there are about 300 officers and men. Most of the men and all the officers, although in the employ of the Company, receive pay and promotion from the Russian Government, while attached to the Company, in which the Emperor is a shareholder. The Company have 12 vessels, varying from 100 to 400 tons each, mounting 10 guns of different calibre.

About 12 of the Company's officers dine daily at the table of the Governor which is sumptuously served. There is a Greek Bishop with several Priests and Deacons, and also a Lutheran minister. There are schools for the children of Europeans and half-breeds.

Subordinate to Sitka, there is a smaller establishment of the same kind at Aliaska, which supplies one post in Bristol Bay, and three posts in Cook's Inlet, all connected with minor stations, in the interior. Another station in Norton Sound has its own inland dependencies. The Russian Company has also permanent forts or flying posts in the Aleutian and Kurile Islands, and a chain of agencies from Ochotsk, in Kamschatka, to St. Petersburg, for the transmission of goods, &c. The distances are nearly thus in geographical miles: Petersburg—to Moscow, 460; to Tobolsk, 1500; to Irkutsk, 1800; to Yakusk, 1500; to Ochotsk, 600; thence to Petropawlowsk, on the bay of Avatscha, 1300 miles.

The whole of the territories is divided into six Agencies, each controlled by the Governor-General, who resides at Sitka.

The inhabitants of the Kurile and Aleutian islands, and those of the large Island of Kodiak, are regarded as the immediate subjects of the Russian Company, in whose service, every man between 18 and 50 may be required to pass at least three years. The natives of the country, adjacent to the two great bays called Cook's Inlet and Prince William's Sound, are also under the control of the Company, and obliged to pay an annual tax in furs and skins. The other aborigines in the Russian territories are not allowed to trade with any people but those of the Russian

Company. In 1836, the number of Russians in the territories of the Company was 730; of native subjects, 1442 creoles; and about 11,000 aborigines of the Kurile, Aleutian and Kodiak Islands.

When Sir G. Simpson visited Sitka, in 1842, the operations of the Company were becoming more extensive than they had hitherto been; the exclusive licence of trade had been extended for a further term of twenty years—the Direction was about to be remodelled, and generally an improved order of things was in progress. The Russian trade in furs is considerable, not only for the supply of Russia itself, but also for barter with the Chinese at Kiachta, on the frontiers of Tartary.

The trade of Sitka, in 1842, was estimated at 10,000 fur seals, 1000 sea otters, 12,000 beavers, 2500 land otters, foxes, and martens, and 20,000 sea-horse teeth.

Formerly the Russians killed the seal young or old, and at all times, to the number of 200,000 a-year, now they follow the example of the Hudson's Bay Company, and kill only such a limited number of males as have attained full growth.

The progress of Sitka in commerce is considerable. In April 1843, Sir G. Simpson found eleven vessels and two steamers in the harbour; one, a steam tug, had its machinery cast and manufactured at Sitka. Steam pleasure boats, of two-horse power, have also been made there. The *Alexander*, of 300 tons, in which Sir G. Simpson made a voyage from Sitka to Ochotsk was fitted more like a man-of-war than a merchant vessel.

The proceedings of the Russian American Company appear to be guided by political as well as by commercial motives. In 1809 the Russian Minister informed the United States Government that the 'Russian Fur Company claimed the whole coast of America on the Pacific and the adjacent islands, from Behring's strait southward to and beyond the mouth of the Columbia river.' (Greenhow, p. 275.) An endeavour was also made by the Russians to occupy the Sandwich Islands. The Hudson's Bay Company materially aided Mr. Canning, in 1825, in the restriction of the Russians to their present northern territories.

## VANCOUVER'S ISLAND, COAL MINES, &c.

VANCOUVER'S ISLAND is in length 290 miles, with an average breadth of 55 miles; it lies between the parallels of  $48^{\circ} 17'$  and  $50^{\circ} 55'$  north latitude, and  $123^{\circ} 10'$  and  $128^{\circ} 30'$  west longitude.

Comparatively little is known of this fine territory, and I shall therefore give all the useful information obtainable.

The following is an extract from a Report by Lieuts. Warre and Vavasour (of the Royal Engineers), dated 26th October, 1845.

' From Port Discovery, we crossed the Straits to Vancouver's Island, commencing in the 48th parallel of latitude, and extending 260 miles north, and about 50 miles in breadth.

' This island is somewhat intersected by high mountain ranges, but the soil is said to be fertile, and well adapted for cultivation. ' We visited the Hudson's Bay Company's post, Fort Victoria, in  $48^{\circ} 26'$  north latitude, and  $123^{\circ} 9'$  west longitude, on the south shore of the island, near the head of the Narrow Inlet (of which we forward a sketch), where they have established a Fort, similar to those already described, a farm of several hundred acres, on which they raise wheat and potatoes, and a depôt of provisions, supplies, &c. for the different trading posts farther to the north.

' The position has been chosen solely for its agricultural advantages, and is ill adapted either as a place of refuge for shipping, or as a position of defence.

' The country to the south of the Straits of De Fuca, between Puget Sound and the coast, is overrun by high rugged mountains, presenting great difficulty in traversing, and but few inducements to the farmer.

' Between the above-mentioned points, there are some fine harbours, among which we may mention Port Discovery and Dungeness, on the south shore, and a bay within three miles of Fort Victoria, called the 'Squinal,' by the Indians, which, from superficial observation, appear to afford anchorage and protection for ships of any tonnage.—(See page 44.)

' The above-mentioned harbours contain an abundant supply of fresh water, in which the rest of the coast is very deficient

Large rivers are formed in the winter season, which become perfectly dry during the summer.

‘ There is coal in the neighbourhood of Puget’s Sound, and on the Cowlitz River\*. The specimens used by the Hudson’s Bay Company, were obtained from the surface, and were probably on that account not found good.

‘ The specimens of lead found in the mountains on the coast are apparently very fine. The fisheries (salmon and sturgeon) are inexhaustible, and game of all descriptions is said to abound.

‘ The timber is extremely luxuriant, and increases in value, as you reach a more northern latitude — that in 50° to 54° being considered the best. Pine, spruce, red and white oak, ash, cedar, arbutus, poplar, maple, willow, and yew, grow in this section of country, north of the Columbia River. The cedar and pine become of an immense size.

‘ At Nisqually, near the head of Puget’s Sound, is the farm of the Puget’s Sound Company, commenced in 1839, and supported chiefly by the gentlemen of the Hudson’s Bay Company. They here cultivate wheat and potatoes, &c., but the magnificent ranges of rich prairie country, between the shores of Puget’s Sound, and the Cascade Mountains to the east, are chiefly used as pasturage for the immense herds of cattle and sheep; the greater number of which were brought from California in 1840–41. From Nisqually we crossed the head waters of several large streams, among others the Nisqually and Chetreels Rivers, rising in the Cascade Mountains, extending along the coast to latitude 49°. These rivers have their channels sunk in some places upwards of a hundred feet below the level of the country, rendering them extremely dangerous and difficult to traverse at the seasons of high water. The Chetreels flows into Grey’s Bay, on the Pacific, is navigable for small boats and canoes, and forms a barred harbour for vessels of small tonnage.

‘ The country is easy of access from Nisqually to the Chetreels

\* Commodore Wilkes says he ‘ examined all the places that indicated coal, and found only *lignite*.’—(Vol. iv., p. 318.)



River, when the soil changes from gravelly loam to a stiff clay, and numerous little rivers, which overflow their banks and flood the country for an immense distance during the winter and spring freshets, render the land journey to the Cowlitz River difficult, and, during that season, almost impracticable.

‘There are a few families settled on plains on this route, and the Americans are forcing themselves as far north as Puget’s Sound. During our travels we met five families on their route to the prairies in that vicinity.

‘There is a settlement of about ninety Canadian families on the Cowlitz River, where the Puget’s Sound Company have about 1000 acres of ground under cultivation. This farm is situated about thirty-five miles from the Columbia.

‘The course of the Cowlitz is rapid, and, in high water dangerous, but presenting no obstacles that are not overcome by the energy and perseverance of the Canadian boatmen. A small establishment has been formed at the mouth of the Cowlitz River, as a store for wheat, &c. which the Hudson’s Bay Company export in large quantities to the Russian settlement at Sitka, and to the Sandwich Islands.’

The following extract of a Report from Lieut. Vavasour, of the Royal Engineers, to Captain Holloway, dated 1st March, 1846, refers to the Hudson’s Bay Company’s establishment on Vancouver’s Island.

‘Fort Victoria is situated on the southern end of Vancouver’s Island, in the small harbour of Cammusan, the entrance to which is rather intricate. The fort is a square enclosure of 100 yards, surrounded by cedar pickets twenty feet in height, having octagonal bastions, containing each six 6-pounder iron guns at the north-east and south-west angles; the buildings are made of squared timber, eight in number, forming three sides of an oblong. This fort has lately been established; it is badly situated with regard to water and position, which latter has been chosen for its agricultural advantages only. About three miles distant, and

nearly connected by a small inlet, is the Squimal Harbour, which is very commodious and accessible at all times, offering a much better position, and having also the advantage of a supply of water in the vicinity.

‘ This is the best built of the Company’s forts ; it requires looping, and a platform or gallery, to enable men to fire over the pickets ; a ditch might be cut round it, but the rock appears on the surface in many places.

‘ There is plenty of timber of every description on Vancouver’s Island, as also limestone, which could be transported to Nisqually, or other places in the territory, where it may be hereafter deemed necessary to form permanent works, barracks, &c.’

---

The Straits of Juan de Fuca, which separate Vancouver’s Island from the main land, may be safely navigated ; the shores are straight and bold ; on the south, composed of perpendicular cliffs that run back in high and rugged peaks ; on the north, rocky, and in some places formed of reddish granite.

Mr. Chief Factor Douglas surveyed the south coast of Vancouver’s Island in 1842, and, after a careful survey, fixed on the port of Camosack as the most eligible site for the Hudson’s Bay Company’s factory within the Straits of De Fuca. At Camosack there is a range of plains nearly six miles square, containing a great extent of valuable tillage and pasture land, abundance of timber around, and water power for flour or saw mills on the canal of Camosack.

At this place the Hudson’s Bay Company have established the station called Fort Victoria, to which reference has been above made ; they have erected buildings and stores, enclosed and cropped land, and stocked the place with cattle. The country is fine, the climate salubrious, and the necessaries of life abundant.

Mr. Douglas, after investigating the south coast of the island, says—‘ Camosack is a pleasant and convenient site for the establishment, within fifty yards of the anchorage, on the border of a large tract of clear land which extends eastward to Point

Gonzalo, at the south-east extremity of the island, and about six miles interiorly, being the most picturesque, and decidedly the most valuable part of the island that we had the good fortune to discover.

- ‘The accompanying ground plan shews pretty correctly the distribution of wood, water, and prairie upon the surface, and to it I beg to refer you for information upon such points.

‘More than two-thirds of this section consists of prairie land, and may be converted either to purposes of tillage or pasture, for which I have seen no part of the Indian country better adapted ; the rest of it, with the exception of the ponds of water, is covered with valuable oak and pine timber. I observed, generally speaking, but two marked varieties of soil on the prairies, that of the best land is a dark vegetable mould, varying from nine to fourteen inches in depth, overlaying a substrate of greyish clayey loam, which produces the rankest growth of native plants that I have seen in America. The other variety is of inferior value, and to judge from the less vigorous appearance of the vegetation upon it, naturally more unproductive. Both kinds, however, produce abundance of grass, and several varieties of red clover grow on the rich moist bottoms. In two places particularly we saw several acres of clover growing with a luxuriance and compactness more resembling the close sward of a well-managed lea, than the produce of an uncultivated waste.

‘Being pretty well assured of the capabilities of the soil as respects the purposes of agriculture, the climate being also mild and pleasant, we ought to be able to grow every kind of grain raised in England. On this point, however, we cannot speak confidently until we have tried the experiment and tested the climate, as there may exist local influences destructive of the husbandman’s hopes, which cannot be discovered by other means. As, for instance, it is well known that the damp fogs which daily spread over the shores of Upper California blight the crops and greatly deteriorate the wheat grown near the sea coast in that country. I am not aware that any such effect is ever felt in the

temperate climate of Britain, nearly corresponding in its insular situation and geographical position with Vancouver's Island, and I hope the latter will also enjoy an exemption from an evil at once disastrous and irremediable. We are certain that potatoes thrive, and grow to a large size, as the Indians have many small fields in cultivation which appear to repay the labour bestowed upon them, and I hope that other crops will do as well. The canal of Camosack is nearly six miles long, and its banks are well wooded throughout.' The results of the Hudson's Bay Company's farming at Vancouver's Island have answered, it is understood, the most sanguine expectations.

Information respecting the coal obtainable in Vancouver's Island is contained in the following—

Copy of a letter from the Board of Management of the Hudson's Bay Company addressed to J. A. Duntze, Esq., Captain of H. M. S. *Fisguard*, dated Fort Vancouver, 7th September, 1846, which the Lords of the Admiralty have favoured me with for this publication.

'Sir,—Since we had last the pleasure of addressing you on the 11th ult. this settlement has not been disturbed by any repetition of the offences mentioned in that letter. A great number of Americans have been down from the Wallamette and made excursions into the country around this place with the view of discovering eligible situations for settlements, but they have committed no overt act of trespass on the rights of the prior occupants of the land.

'The Americans having never shewn any predilection for settling on the north side of the Columbia River until the United States' schooner, *Shark*, arrived at this port, and the excitement among them having greatly abated since her departure from hence, we cannot help thinking that the people were directly or indirectly encouraged by the officers of that vessel to encroach upon our settlements. This was, to speak of it in the mildest

terms, a most imprudent act on their part, which cannot possibly do any good, nor add one iota to the rights of the United States; but, on the contrary, must tend to much evil, by dragging the ignorant and over-exciteable population of the country into mischievous courses.

‘We beg to add, in justice to Captain Howison, the commander of the *Shark*, that he evinced much concern on observing the lengths to which his countrymen were disposed to carry their encroachments, and made some exertions to put a stop to their proceedings.

‘The prevailing opinion among the Americans now appears to be, that Great Britain will give up the Columbia and accept the 49th parallel of latitude as a boundary, and, moreover, they firmly believe that the British subjects in this country will not be allowed to hold the lands they now occupy when the Government of the United States comes into possession; consequently, each and all are striving to establish pre-emption rights on our settlements, in hopes of coming into possession the moment we are, according to their views, obliged to surrender them.

‘In your communication to the officer in charge of Fort Victoria, you request all the information in our power as to the coals on Vancouver’s Island, and we will now do ourselves the pleasure of detailing all that is known to us on the subject.

‘From the indications of the strata, which have been carefully examined, it appears very probable that this mineral abounds over all the north-eastern part of Vancouver’s Island, that is to say, from Cheslakers, latitude  $50^{\circ} 36'$ , to Cape Scott, at its northern extremity, as traced by a dotted line in the accompanying sketch. The spot, however, familiarly known to us as the Coal Mine, and where the coal bed rises above the surface, is situated in McNeil’s Harbour, on the line of coast designated, its position being about latitude  $50^{\circ} 39'$ ; longitude  $127^{\circ} 10'$  west, and is marked Coal Mine on the sketch. The coal beds, to the partial extent they have been explored, appear to be divided by intermediate layers of sandstone, and are seen most distinctly on the open beach, ex-

tending over a space of about one mile in length, generally within the line of high water: the mineral having evidently been laid bare by the wash of the sea, which has in course of time frittered and worn away the incumbent mould and sandstone. A fresh water rivulet which runs across the bed in a direction perpendicular to the beach, has also laid bare a transverse section of the coal to the distance of three quarters of a mile from the sea, shewing that the bed runs in a nearly horizontal direction as far as that point, beyond which the depth of the strata has not been ascertained.

‘ It is, however, important to know that the coal can be worked with comparatively small expense over a field of such extent.

‘ We have not ascertained to what depth the surface bed extends, but we know it exceeds three feet; having explored to that depth without finding any interposing stratum of mould.

‘ A large quantity of coal may at any time be got there, by employing the Indians, who are numerous and active, to dig and transport them to the ship. They are by no means averse to such employment, and ask a very moderate remuneration for their labour.

‘ On one occasion, when we employed them for that purpose, they brought in upwards of ninety tons in a few days, which they dug with hatchets and other inconvenient implements; and there is no doubt, that with proper excavating tools, they could have done the work much more expeditiously.

‘ Besides the loss of time, the want of tools is attended with another disadvantage, as it confines the workmen to the mere surface lumps, which is deprived of its bitumen by exposure to the weather, and does not burn so freely as the substrata.

‘ The coals burn remarkably well when exposed to a strong blast in the furnace of the steam vessel. Externally the coal is hard and brittle, interspersed with sulphuret of iron, and contains but little earthy or incombustible matter\*.

\* The Vancouver coal has been tried in England, and answers well for forge work.

‘ It requires rather a higher temperature to burn than the better kind of Newcastle coals, but is superior in this respect to some of the kinds sold in the London market. It contains sulphur, a pretty large proportion of bitumenous matter, and yields coke in the proportion of 52 per cent.

‘ If the British Government has any intention of making this coal available for the use of their steam navy, it will be necessary, in order to keep a constant supply on hand, to form an establishment on the spot, of sufficient force to protect it against the natives, who are numerous, bold, and treacherous, and also to carry on the mining operations. We would in such a case recommend that an application on the subject be made to the Directors of the Hudson’s Bay Company in London, who could in a short time take measures to get the necessary means collected under the management of experienced persons, acquainted with Indian character, and capable of drawing the greatest possible advantage from their presence.

‘ We shall be most happy to do anything in our power to forward this object, but it will in the first place be necessary to enter into arrangements with the Directors of the Company in London, as we have not the means in the country, and we do not feel at liberty to undertake a measure of such importance without their sanction.

‘ We take the liberty of making this suggestion as to the proper mode of proceeding, in order that no time may be lost hereafter in carrying out the ulterior arrangements, should Government deem it an object of importance to form an establishment at M’Neill Harbour, or at some other point for the purpose of collecting coals for the regular supply of the steam navy in the Pacific.

‘ We remain, Sir,

‘ With much respect,

‘ Your most obedient servants,

(Signed)

‘ PETER SKEEN OGDEN,

‘ JAMES DOUGLAS.”

A further description of the coal region in Vancouver's Island, and the mode of obtaining this valuable mineral, is given in the following statement from Captain George F. Gordon, of Her Majesty's steamer *Cormorant*. Admiral Sir George Seymour, Naval Commander-in-chief, says—' In transmitting this report from Captain George Gordon, I consider it my duty to add, that during the service on which he has been employed on the very distant parts of this station from which he has returned, he has continued to display his merit as one of the best steam officers in Her Majesty's service.' Having served in early life as a brother officer with Captain Gordon in the arduous expedition of the *Leven* and *Barracouta* under Commodore W. F. W. Owen, I venture to add my testimony of the high character of this distinguished officer, who has expressed a decided opinion in favour of the Hudson's Bay Company, with whose proceedings he was well acquainted.

H. M. Steam Sloop *Cormorant*, Nisqually,

October 7, 1846.

' Sir,—With reference to that part of your letter of the 15th September last, wherein you direct me to ascertain whether the coals which are said to abound on the northern part of Vancouver's Island, can be collected in a sufficient quantity to afford a supply for steam-fuel, I have the honour to inform you, that having arrived at McNeil's Harbour for that purpose, I made known to the natives through Mr. Sangster, my wish to obtain a supply, and the next day several canoes came laden with coal, and they continued to increase in number until our departure.

' At the advice of Mr. Sangster, I slung a tub, holding about six cwt. from the fore yard, which was lowered into a canoe and quickly filled: in this manner we received sixty-two tons from the 24th to the 26th, paying for each tub as it came up by articles of trifling value, which I procured at your suggestion from the officer in charge of Fort Victoria. The whole of the expenses incurred, including a few presents necessarily made to the Chiefs, will make the coals average not more than 4s. per ton.



‘ During our stay, I proceeded on shore, accompanied by Mr. Sangster and the first and second engineers. I found the north-west point of McNeil’s Harbour to be a Peninsula, and in honour of the First Lord of the Admiralty, I called it Ellenborough. We found a seam of coal just below high water-mark, which appeared to descend at an angle of about 30° toward the land. We then ascended the hill, and very near the top, at about sixty feet above the level of the sea, in the bed of the stream, we found a layer of freestone, at about 5 feet 6 inches below a surface of peat, and below that a seam of coal much resembling in appearance the English Newcastle coal. This seam was ten inches thick with freestone below; having bored through and blasted this we came to another seam 18 inches in thickness, both seams appearing to run parallel to each other, descending at an angle of 20° in a north-westerly direction.

‘ Being confident from these two trials that the seams thicken lower down, I did not make any further experiments here, but proceeded the next day to a small sheltered bay about eight miles farther down the coast to the north-west, which was called Baillie Hamilton Bay, after Captain Baillie Hamilton, Secretary of the Admiralty. Here we observed another rich seam, extending along the beach below high water-mark, and which we traced a quarter of a mile in an inland direction.

‘ The seams we found were similar in appearance and thickness to those on Ellenborough Peninsula, which confirms me in an opinion I had formed, that they were connected.

‘ On trial we found the coal of good quality; they flare much in the furnace, and do not appear to have any of the injurious effects on either the fire-bars or furnaces that Welch coal has. The proportionate expense for four hours, as compared with Scotch and Welch, is as follows, *viz.* :—

	Tons.	Cwt.
‘ Welch .....	2	8
‘ Scotch .....	2	14
‘ Ellenborough and Hamilton .....	2	18

‘ This difference may appear considerable in proportion; but

the coal having been procured from the surface where it has been exposed to the action of the atmosphere, and much of it to the injurious effects of salt water, will weigh considerably in favour of the Ellenborough and Hamilton coal. Had it been procured at several feet from the surface, I have no hesitation in saying that the result would be at least equal to the best Scotch coal. We have also tried it at the forge, and welded several bars of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch, and the heats were as clean as if taken with the best English coal.

‘ It is my belief, that the field does not extend farther to the westward than the eastern shore of Beaver Harbour, and to the eastward than the Innihish River, marked in the accompanying plan by a dotted line; indeed, the feature of the country from Beaver Harbour to Shuchaste, is quite different, being covered with hard blue whin rock, without any appearance of freestone whatever.

‘ It is impossible to form any opinion of the extent of the field in an inland direction, but from the appearance of the country, I am of opinion that it is very considerable.

‘ On first going on shore, the natives appeared tenacious of our examining the coals, and accused us of coming to steal them; but having made a few presents to some of the chiefs, they entered into our views, and became very active, and I am only surprised, that with the rude implements they have for digging, *viz.* hatchets and wooden wedges, they were able to procure so large a quantity in so short a time, and I am persuaded, that with the means we have, assisted by the natives, we could fill our coal bunkers in from ten to fourteen days.

‘ The natives are a fine race of men, and appear industrious and friendly, but are much addicted to thieving.

‘ In conclusion, I beg leave to remark, that the coal district, in my opinion, is admirably situated, possessing, as it does, excellent anchorage in its neighbourhood, and being so far north, that vessels of almost any burthen can approach it by way of Cape Scott, thus avoiding the difficult and dangerous navi-

gation of Sir George Seymour's Narrows and Johnstone's Straits.

'I have the honor to be,

'Sir,

'Your most obedient humble Servant,

(Signed)

'G. T. GORDON, *Commander*.

'To JOHN A. DUNTZE, Esq.,

Captain of H.M.S. *Fisgard*, and Senior Officer.'

The following is an extract of a Despatch from Rear-Admiral Sir George Seymour, dated H.M.S. *Collingwood*, 26th February, 1847.

'The harbour of Esquimalt, near the new establishment of the Hudson's Bay Company's fort, Victoria, in the straits of Juan de Fuca, is described to be capable of receiving ships of the line in security, and is a valuable addition to our knowledge of the island, of which, in general, I am glad to see Captain Gordon has formed a very favourable impression.'

In due time, further information will doubtless be obtained as to the extent of cultivable land in Vancouver's Island; what is known is favourable to its occupation by British subjects, and the fort formed by the Hudson's Bay Company, is the nucleus of a colony which may be extended as circumstances require. I venture to express a hope, that a very moderate price be fixed on the land: twelve years ago, I stood almost alone in opposition to what was termed the 'Wakefield Principle,' of selling all land at an uniform, or at least a minimum price of 20s. per acre. New South Wales has now found the disadvantage of this measure, which has checked the sale of land, and turned emigrants, who would have been farmers, into 'squatters,' holding large tracts of territory under licence.

Much will depend on the adoption of a liberal principle in the granting of land, to make Vancouver's Island a flourishing colony.

## Part II.

### CONSTITUTION AND WORKING OF THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY.

THE Constitution of the Hudson's Bay Company is founded on the Royal Charter of 2nd May, 1670, (see Appendix A,) at which period the Crown possessed, and sometimes exercised, the right of granting dominion and exclusive trade to individuals, or to associations, without the Sovereign asking the consent, or the grantee needing the sanction of Parliament.

The Charter issued by Charles II. to Prince Rupert and his associates, in the Hudson's Bay Company, was granted *in perpetuity*,—has the same validity as any other Royal Charter, and is as truly a rightful property, as is the land or houses of an Englishman's private estate. The lawfulness of the Charter, or of the Company founded on the Charter, have never been questioned by the Crown or Parliament; on the contrary, there has been a full recognition in various public documents, such as the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, and the treaty of Oregon in 1846, which gives to the Hudson's Bay Company the right of navigating the Columbia;—in various Acts of Parliament, viz.: 2nd of William and Mary, A.D. 1690, which 'ratified, confirmed, and established the said Letters Patent, or Charter, hereinbefore mentioned, bearing date, second day of May in the two and twentieth year of his said late Majesty, King Charles II., to the Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudson's Bay, and to their successors, *for ever*\*.'—By 6 Ann, c. 37, when all the

\* This was merely a declaratory Act for 'confirming to the Governor and Company trading to Hudson's Bay their privileges and trade,' and was passed under the erroneous idea that the 'punishment of offenders, recovering of forfeitures and fines, the making of bye-laws, orders, rules, and constitutions, for the due management of the trade, *cannot be so effectually done as by authority of Parliament.*' This Act did not in any manner question or interfere with the powers and rights conferred by the charter of 1670; on the contrary, it recognised them in the strongest and most explicit terms; declared that the said 'Governor and Company and their successors shall at *all times* from henceforth stand, continue, and be a body politic and corporate in deed and in name, according to the purport and effect of the said charter,' which 'shall from henceforth be good and effectual and available in the law, and to all intents, constructions, and purposes, to the aforesaid Governor and Company and their successors *for evermore*. This Act effectually enabled the Company to restrain interlopers, and its renewal on expiry at the end of seven years was unnecessary.

estates, rights, and privileges, of the Hudson's Bay Company, were declared to be saved, notwithstanding the tenor and tendency of the Act, which proposed to facilitate the Colonial trade.—By 14 Geo. III., c. 83, the northern boundary of Canada was to be the southern boundary of '*the territory granted to the Hudson's Bay Company* :—By 1 & 2 Geo. IV., c. 66, the Charter of Rupert's Land was twice expressly recognised. Thus, by the Parliaments of England and of Scotland, and by the Parliament of England, Scotland, and Ireland, the Charter of 1670 has been recognised and confirmed.

The *Crown* recognition of the Charter has been manifested on several occasions ; especially by the Royal Licence of George the Fourth, dated Carlton House, 5th December, 1821, which was issued to the Hudson's Bay Company, and to W. & S. M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, Esqrs., for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America as should be specified, '*not being part of the lands or territories heretofore granted to the Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading to Hudson's Bay* ;' and this Royal licence was expressly issued to prevent the admission of individual or associated bodies into the North American Fur trade, as '*the competition in the said trade has been found for some years to be productive of great inconvenience and loss, not only to the said Hudson's Bay Company and Associations, but to the said trade in general, and also of great injury to the native Indians, and others our subjects.*'

The Royal licence 'of exclusive trade with the Indians in certain parts of North America, for a further term of 21 years, and upon the surrender of the former grant,' was issued by Her Majesty Queen Victoria, dated Buckingham Palace, May 30, 1838, to the Hudson's Bay Company alone (Messrs. M'Gillivray and E. Ellice having surrendered their rights and interests under the previous licence to the Hudson's Bay Company,) '*to encourage the trade with the Indians of North America, and prevent, as much as possible, a recurrence of the evils referred to in the previous grant.*'—(See Appendix B.)

After these documents, it may be as well to refer to the recorded opinions of the distinguished lawyers, Samuel Romilly, G. S. Holroyd, William Cruse, J. Scarlett, and John Bell, given on the 10th June, 1814, as follows: 'We are of opinion that the grant of the soil contained in the Charter is good, and that it will include all the countries the waters of which flow into Hudson's Bay; that an individual, holding from the Hudson's Bay Company, a lease or grant, in fee simple, of any portion of their territory, will be entitled to all the ordinary rights of landed property in England; that the grant of civil and criminal jurisdiction is valid, and to be exercised by the Governor and Council as Judges, who are to proceed according to the laws of England; that the Company may appoint a Sheriff to execute judgments, and do his duty as in England; that all persons will be subject to the jurisdiction of the Court, who reside, or are found within the territories over which it extends, and we *do not* think that the Act 43 Geo. III., c. 138, (commonly called the Canada Jurisdiction Act) gives jurisdiction within the territories of the Hudson's Bay Company—the same being within the jurisdiction of their own Governors and Council.'

No charters issued even now by the Crown, *de mero motu*, require any sanction or confirmation by Parliament; the minister, under whose advice they may be granted, is responsible of course to Parliament.

The Charter granted in 1670 by Charles II. resembled in its privilege of exclusive trade the Charter granted by Queen Elizabeth in 1599 to the Company of Adventurers trading to the East Indies, and in its territorial rights was conformable to other Royal Charters granted by Elizabeth, James I., William and Mary, &c.

The Hudson's Bay Company, according to the printed list of 17th November, 1847, consists of 239 proprietors, representing a capital stock of £.400,000. The affairs of the corporation are managed by a Governor, Deputy Governor, and Committee of seven, elected by Proprietors holding each not less than £.900 stock for six months previous to voting, except such stock be

acquired by bequest, marriage, &c. Of the 239 proprietors, fifty-five have more than two votes. Each member of the Committee must hold not less than £.1800 stock. The annexed Charter of 1670 prescribes the mode of election, oaths to be administered, &c.; authorises the Governor and Company to make laws and ordinances for the good government of their territory, and the advancement of trade, and to impose penalties and punishments not repugnant to the laws of England, as shown in the following clause:—‘The Governor and his Council of the several and respective places where the said Company shall have plantations, forts, factories, colonies, or places of trade, within any of the countries, lands, or territories hereby granted, may have power to judge all persons belonging to the said Governor and Company, or that shall live under them, in all causes, whether civil or criminal, according to the laws of this kingdom, and to execute justice accordingly. And, in case any crime or misdemeanor shall be committed in any of the said Company’s plantations, forts, factories, or places of trade, within the limits aforesaid, where judicature cannot be executed for want of a Governor and Council there, then, in such case, it shall and may be lawful for the Chief Factor of that place, and his Council, to transmit the party, together with the offence, to such other plantation, factory, or fort where there shall be a Governor and Council, where justice may be executed.’ The Company has, accordingly, established, at the Red River Settlement, at a considerable expense, a Governor, Council, Recorder, Sheriff, Coroner, &c. for the due government of the affairs of the Assiniboia or Red River territory, and for the careful and legal administration of justice throughout Rupert’s Land.

The charge of the learned Recorder, Adam Thom, to the Grand Jury of Assiniboia, 20th February, 1845, is an able document with reference to the jurisdiction of the Court,—the duties of the Grand and Petty Jurors,—the power of the law over civil suits and criminal prosecutions,—the proceedings of the magistracy in Rupert’s Land, and the practical dispensation of justice. Offences of a petty nature are not dealt with in a sum-

mary way, as in England, by justices of the peace ; in the Hudson's Bay territories, they are subject to the scrutinizing inquisition of a jury of the colonists. Trial by jury, although not enjoined by the Royal Charter of 1670, was introduced into the Red River settlement by Sir G. Simpson, under the directions of the Hudson's Bay authorities in England.

From February 1840, to November 1844, no crime occurred in Rupert's Land to require the summoning of a grand jury the charge of the learned Recorder, referred to above, arose out of a case of homicide of an Indian woman by an Indian man within the limits of the Red River settlement, under the influence of drunkenness. It appears that crime is comparatively rare in Rupert's Land, and that justice is effectively and mercifully administered under the same safeguards that exist in England\*.

The fur and peltry traffic of the Company is regulated by a Deed Poll, bearing date 26th March, 1821, on the junction of the north-west traders with the Hudson's Bay Company; and by another Deed Poll, bearing date 6th June, 1834, 'for ascertaining the rights and prescribing the duties of the chief factors and the chief traders, and for conducting the trade.' The Deed Poll of 1821 was made between the Hudson's Bay Company on the one part, and on the other part by W. and S. Mc Gillivray and Edward Ellice, who represented in England the interests of the wintering partners in America of the north-west traders—whose partnership expired in 1821—and who, as they received little or no profits, were desirous of merging their interests in those of the Hudson's Bay Company. A co-partnery was therefore agreed to for twenty-one years, on the basis that each should provide an equal capital for carrying on the trade.

The expenses of establishments in England and America are paid out of the trade ; no expense relating to colonization, or to any business separate from trade, forms a charge on the concern. Profits are divided into 100 shares, of which, forty are divided between chief factors and chief traders, according to profit and

\* See letters in Appendix from two clergymen of the Church of England on the present state of the Red River Settlement.



loss; if a loss occur in one year on these forty shares, it is made good out of the profits of next year. Inventory, general account, and tariff of goods, are made out yearly on 1st June; and if profits are not paid to parties within fourteen days after 1st June, interest is allowed of five per cent.

The Governor and Company appoint governors to preside at councils of chief factors, who carry into effect all acts authorized by the Charter. Senior chief traders assist in forming council, if there be not seven chief factors present: each member of council has a vote; two-thirds form a majority for decision. There must be three chief factors, besides the President, to constitute a Council.

By the Deed Poll of 1821, there were twenty-five chief factors and twenty-eight chief traders appointed, who were named in alternate succession from the Hudson's Bay Company, and North-West Company's servants.

The servants of both Companies were placed on an equal footing; the 40 shares out of the 100, were subdivided into 85 shares, and each of the 25 chief factors was entitled to 2 shares or  $\frac{2}{85}$ ths, and each of the 28 chief traders to  $\frac{1}{85}$ th,—the remaining 7 out of the 85 shares were appropriated to old servants, in certain proportions, for seven years.

The chief factors superintend the business of the Company at the respective stations, and the chief traders under them carry on the trade with the Indians. The clerks serve under both; the humblest clerk, who goes out from the Orkneys or elsewhere, by good conduct may rise to the chief positions in the service of the Company. The salaries of the clerks vary from £.20 to £.100 per annum.

The chief factors and traders who winter in the interior are allowed, in addition to their share of profits, certain personal necessities free of charge: they are not of course permitted to carry on any private trade for themselves with the Indians; strict accounts, inventories, valuations, &c., are required of them annually, and the Councils at the respective posts have power to mulct, admonish, or suspend any of the Company's servants.

Three chief factors and two chief traders are allowed to leave the

country annually for one year. A chief factor or a chief trader, after wintering three years in the service of the Company, may retire and hold his full share of profits for one year after retiring and half of the share for the four ensuing years. If he winters for five years, then half for six years. Three chief factors, or two chief factors and two chief traders, are allowed to retire annually according to rotation. The representatives of a chief factor or chief trader, who may die after having wintered five years, receive all the benefit to which the deceased himself would have been entitled had he lived; and in like proportions for less duration of service.

The accounts are kept with great accuracy, the business conducted with punctuality, and the whole machinery of the Company is worked with order and economy, under the watchful care of a Governor and Committee in London.

Sales are made by public auction of furs or peltry, several times in each year, at the Company's premises in London. There is no upset price for the goods; they are sold to the highest bidder. The Company has no monopoly, as some suppose, of the importation of furs, &c. into England; they have to compete with those of the United States of America, of Russia, Norway, &c., and if other traders can sell lower than the Company, the public have, of course, the benefit. Beaver and other skins are now sold at much lower prices than formerly, and the steady supply from the Hudson's Bay territories has materially tended to the reduction of the price of foreign furs and skins, and has made 'London undoubtedly the most extensive market for furs in the world.' [Greenhow, p. 412.]

By the printed list of the sale in March 1848, it appears that the following goods were sold by auction at the Hudson's Bay House in Fenchurch Street:—5780 otter; 4580 fisher; 900 fox, silver; 18,100 ditto, cross, red, white, and kitt; 2566 bear, black; 536 ditto, brown, grey, and white; 30,100 lynx; 9800 wolf; 680 wolverin; 121,000 marten; 24,000 mink skins; and sundry furs;—and on 30th August, 1848, 21,349 beaver skins; 54 lbs. coat beaver and pieces; 808 otter skins; 195 sea

otter; 150 fur seal; 744 fisher; 1344 fox; 2997 bear; 29,785 marten; 14,103 mink; 18,553 musquash; 1551 swan; 1015 lynx; 632 cat; 1494 wolf; 228 wolverin; 2090 raccoon; and 2884 deer skins; &c. &c.

Caprice, fashion, changes in trade, or in the use of the different articles for manufacture, materially influences the price of goods; thus, for instance, the introduction of silk hats has much reduced the price of beaver skins and other furs.

The fall in the price of all skins has been very great, but as beaver constitutes the largest item in value, the reduction of profit to the Company will be seen by a comparison with the prices and amount of sales in

	1839 and 1846.	
Price of beaver skin . . .	27s. 6d.	3s. 5d.
Number of skins sold . . .	55,486	45,389
Sale proceeds . . .	£.76,312	£.7856.

There is also great variety in the prices of articles of similar denomination. At the sales on 30th August last, two lots of otter, sixty-six in the lot, sold for 33s.; another lot, with seventy-two in it, sold only for £.1 11s. Fisher skins varied from 26s. 3d. to 3s. each; bear skins, 45s. to 12s.; martens, 14s. 8d. to 3s. 1d.; silver fox from £.7 to 2s. per skin. But the Hudson's Bay Company are obliged to pay the same price to the Indians for all skins, according to tariff; whether the skins be good or bad, the Company must buy them. By the time these skins are conveyed from the interior to the coast, warehoused, and shipped, their cost is greatly enhanced, irrespective of loss by damage, interest of money, insurances, &c.

The profits of the shareholders in London are not therefore to be estimated by the difference in price between the cost of a skin at one of the Company's forts in the interior, and its sale price in London. There are the heavy charges of different forts in the north-west territories:—the losses by non-fulfilment of contracts, (for the Indians, like the Eastern nations, almost invariably require advances, and always endeavour to be in debt to the Company),—

the deficiency of skins or furs in scarce seasons,—and the reductions in price at home; the long period for which the Company lose interest on their outlay, from the time of the transmission of their goods from London, to the re-payment of the same in five, six, or sometimes seven years, by their fur sales in London, as the Company always keep one year's stock of goods on hand in their territories; the expense of obtaining and transmitting food is often a heavy item, for at many of the Company's forts, the poor Indians would perish during an unusually inclement winter, when the buffalo and deer flee from the wind-swept plains to the shelter of the woods.

Whatever be the profits, after paying the whole expenses at home and abroad, they are divided, according to the provisions of the Deed-Poll just quoted, into fifths; of which three go to the proprietary, and two among the chief factors and chief traders of the Company, instead of salaries.

Considerable expenditure is necessary to try new districts, which sometimes, however originally promising, are ultimately found not to answer, and the establishments have to be withdrawn at a loss.

By the Licences of 1821 and 1838, the Company were authorized to trade over the 'Indian territories' west of the Rocky Mountains, then also open to the subjects of the United States. It was of great importance to us that Great Britain should obtain a footing and position in Oregon and on the Columbia River, which Mr. Canning had expressed his determination to maintain as British property. The Hudson's Bay Company therefore incurred large expenditure in establishing themselves on the coast of the Pacific, and the result is thus shown in the evidence laid before Parliament, 8th August, 1842, page 26.

'For many years previous to the grant of exclusive trade to the Hudson's Bay Company, the trade of that coast was engrossed by the subjects of the United States of America and Russia, the only establishment occupied by British traders being 'Astoria,' afterwards named 'Fort George,' at the mouth of the Columbia River, while no attempt was made, through the means

of shipping, to obtain any part of the trade of the coast; and so unprofitable was it in the years 1818, 1819, 1820, 1821 and 1822, and so difficult of management, that several of the leading and most intelligent persons in the country, strongly recommended that the Company should abandon it altogether. The Company, however, felt that the honour of the concern would, in a certain degree, be compromised were they to adopt that recommendation, holding as they did, under Government, the licence in question, and with a degree of energy and enterprise, which, I feel assured, your Lordships will admit, reflects much credit on themselves and on their officers and servants in the country, they directed their efforts so vigorously to that branch of the business, that they compelled the American adventurers, one by one, to withdraw from the contest, and are now pressing the Russian Fur Company so closely, that although that association is supported by its government, to the extent of affording them the assistance of a strong military guard at each of their establishments, which, with their shipping, are officered by naval and military officers of the Imperial army and navy, we are gaining ground upon them, and hope, at no very distant period, to confine them to the trade of their own proper territory.

‘The outlay and expense attending this competition in trade are so heavy, that the profits are yet but in perspective, none worthy of notice having been realized, the result showing some years a trifling loss, and in others a small gain, fluctuating according to the degree of activity with which the contest is maintained; but by energy and perseverance, we hope, in due time, to bring it to a more favourable issue, if the facilities of protection now required of Her Majesty’s Government be afforded.

‘This trade, nevertheless, affords employment to about 1000 men, occupying 21 permanent trading establishments, two migratory, trading and trapping expeditions, a steam vessel, and five sailing vessels from 100 to 300 tons burthen, all armed; and so dangerous is the trade, that I lament to say that it has not been unattended with loss of life.’

The expenses incident to the Red River settlement are also a drain on the funds of the Company.

An erroneous opinion has been entertained that the past (as well as the present) profits of the Company have been enormous. But the truth is shown in the following extract from the Parliamentary Papers of 8th August, 1842, p.p. 24, 25:

‘The Hudson’s Bay Company was incorporated in the year 1670, under a Royal Charter of Charles the Second, which granted them certain territories in North America described in that Charter, together with exclusive privileges of trade, &c. &c. Between the years 1670 and 1690, a period of 20 years, the profits appear to have been very large, as, notwithstanding losses sustained by the capture of the Company’s establishments by the French in the years 1682 to 1688, amounting to £.118,014, they were enabled to make a payment to the proprietors in 1684 of 50 per cent.; another payment in 1688 of 50 per cent.; and of a further payment in 1689 of 25 per cent.

‘In 1690 the stock was trebled without any call being made, besides affording a payment to the proprietors of 25 per cent. on the increased or newly-created stock; in the years 1692, 1694, 1696, and 1697, the Company incurred loss and damage, to the amount of £.97,500, by other captures of their establishments by the French.

‘These losses appear to have rendered it necessary for the Company to borrow money, on which they paid 6 per cent. interest; they were enabled, nevertheless, in 1720, again to treble their capital stock, with only a call of 10 per cent. on the proprietors; and, notwithstanding another heavy loss sustained, by the capture of their establishments by the French under La Perouse, in 1782, they appear to have been enabled to pay dividends of from 5 to 12 per cent., averaging 9 per cent., and showing, as nearly as I am able to judge from the defective state of the books during the past century, profits on the originally subscribed capital stock actually paid up, of between 60 and 70 per cent. per annum from the year 1690 to 1800.

‘ Up to this period the Hudson’s Bay Company had no great cause for complaint of interference with their inland trade, and if they had been left unmolested, or been protected in the undisturbed possession of it, and of the rights and privileges vested in them by their Charter, they would in all probability have continued in the enjoyment of the advantages they were then deriving from their labours and exertions in those remote and little frequented wilds.

‘ But about that period their rights of territory and trade were invaded by rival traders, which led to animosities, feuds, and breaches of the peace, extending to the loss of lives, and considerable destruction of property, injurious to the native Indians, by reason of the unrestricted use of spirituous liquors and other demoralizing influences, consequent on opposition, and so prejudicial to the interests of the Hudson’s Bay Company, that between 1800 and 1821, a period of 22 years, their dividends were, for the first eight years, reduced to 4 per cent ; during the next six years they could pay no dividend at all ; and for the remaining eight years they could only pay 4 per cent.

‘ During a long succession of years, while this destructive contest existed, very frequent applications for protection and redress were made by the Hudson’s Bay Company to his Majesty’s Government, as may be seen by reference to the records of the Colonial Office, but without avail, and scenes of bloodshed, robbery and demoralization, revolting to humanity, were allowed to pass without any effectual measures being taken to punish or prevent them, although the Hudson’s Bay Company had every claim on Government to support them in their just rights of territory and trade.

‘ At length, in the year 1821, when the violence of the contest had nearly exhausted the means of both parties, an arrangement was entered into between them, by which their interests became united, under the management of the Hudson’s Bay Company.

‘ The proprietary were then called upon to pay £.100 per cent. upon their capital, which, with the stock in trade of both parties

in the country, formed a capital stock of £400,000 on which 4 per cent. dividend was paid in the years 1821 to 1824, and from that time to the present, half-yearly dividends of 5 per cent., with a bonus of 10 per cent. from the year 1828 to 1832, and since that an average bonus of 6 per cent. until last year, when none was paid.

‘When your Lordships come to consider the very hazardous nature of the trade, requiring a degree of enterprise unknown to almost any other business, together with the heavy losses to which the parties interested therein were subjected for a long series of years, from the want of protection and support, which they had a right to expect from his Majesty’s Government, I feel assured your Lordships will join me in opinion that the profits now arising from the business are no more than a fair return for the capital employed, and the services the Hudson’s Bay Company are rendering the mother country in securing to it a branch of commerce which they are at present wresting out of the hands of foreigners, subjects of Russia and the United States of America, but which the Company would have been unable to prosecute, had they not been protected by the licence of exclusive trade they now hold.

‘In looking at these profits, however, it should be borne in mind that Hudson’s Bay stock, in like manner as in all other stocks, changes hands very frequently, and that the price of the stock is entirely regulated by the return it produces, thereby affording to the bulk of the present proprietors little more than 6 per cent. for their money.’

It is stated in the papers laid before Parliament, 8th August, 1842, in an enclosure, dated 1st February, 1837, that the Company then had 136 establishments, besides hunting expeditions and shipping—affording employment to twenty-five chief factors, twenty-seven chief traders, 152 clerks, and about 1,200 regular servants, besides the occasional labour in boating, and other services of a great number of the natives.

In a public letter to Lord Glenelg, dated 10th February, 1837,



(see Parliamentary Papers of 8th August, 1842), it is mentioned, that the Hudson's Bay Company had then fully occupied the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific, by six permanent establishments on the coasts, and sixteen in the interior; besides several migratory and hunting parties; and they possessed on the coast a marine of six armed vessels, one of them a steam vessel.

The Company maintain several medical officers for different forts, and at every trading establishment there is in fact an Indian hospital, from which the natives derive the greatest benefit, as they resort thither in great numbers, when suffering from age, infirmities, or other causes.

In order to remove misconception as to the internal trade and working of the Hudson's Bay Company, the following explanatory statement is taken from the report of Commodore Wilkes, who was an impartial eye-witness of that which he describes:—

‘All the imported goods are divided into three classes, *viz.*—articles of gratuity, those of trade, and those intended to pay for small services, labour, and provisions. The first consists of knives and tobacco; the second, of blankets, guns, cloth, powder, and shot; the third, of shirts, handkerchiefs, ribands, beads, &c. These articles are bartered at seemingly great profits, and many persons imagine that large gain must be the result from the Indian trade; but this is seldom the case. The Indians and settlers understand well the worth of each article, and were not inclined to give for it more than its real value, besides getting a present or ‘potlach’ to boot. The Company are obliged to make advances to all their trappers, if they wish to be sure of their services; and from such a reckless set, there is little certainty of getting returns, even if the trapper has it in his power. In fact, he will not return with his season's acquisitions, unless he is constrained to pursue the same course of life for another year, when he requires a new advance. In order to avoid losses by the departure of their men, the parties, some thirty or forty in number, are placed under an officer who has charge of the whole.

These are allowed to take their wives, and even families, with them; and places, where they are to trap during the season, on some favourable ground, are assigned to them. These parties leave Vancouver in October, and return by May or June. They usually trap on shares, and the portion they are to receive is defined by an agreement, the conditions of which depend very much upon their skill.

‘All the profits of the Company depend upon economical management, for the quantity of peltry in this section of the country, and indeed, it may be said, the fur trade on this side of the mountains has fallen off *fifty per cent.* within the last few years.’ [Vol. iv. p. 333, ‘*Narrative of the United States’ Exploring Expedition, during the years 1838, 39, 40, 41, and 1842.* London, Wiley and Putnam, 1845].

The Americans have found to their cost that as individual traders they cannot derive any advantage by traffic with the Indians, for even when successful in the purchase of furs, they are liable to be plundered and murdered, as exemplified in the following account of the massacre of twenty-one Americans on the Umqua River:—

‘A trapper of the name of Smith, a remarkably shrewd and intelligent man, had encamped on the left bank of the last-mentioned river with twenty followers, and had ascended the stream in a canoe with two companions of his own party, and a native of the neighbourhood, to find a convenient place for crossing. On his return, his Indian was hailed by another from the shore, who spoke to him in his own language, which was unknown alike to Smith and to his people. A sufficiently intelligible interpretation, however, soon followed; for Smith’s savage upset the canoe by a jerk, thereby pitching the guns of the white men, as well as the white men themselves, into the current. Under a heavy fire, Smith and one of his men found their way to the bank, the other man having fallen a victim either to the enemies shot, or to the depths of the Umqua. On reaching the banks of the river opposite to his camp, the trapper found his

men murdered, and all his property rifled. Smith, after encountering many dangers, and enduring many hardships, reached one of our forts; and, at a great inconvenience to our own business, we compelled the savages, by a demonstration of force, to surrender to him their booty.' [*Sir G. Simpson's Voyage round the World*, vol. i.]

The operations of the Hudson's Bay Company, and those of the Russians in the north, have almost excluded the Americans from the fur trade, as there are few animals now found south of the parallel of 49°.

Several detached bodies of American trappers range the country, south of 49° north latitude; but, as Mr. Greenhow justly says, the hunters have no settlement of any kind, and, as is shown in the case just quoted, are liable at any moment to be massacred. A single hint from the chief officer of the Fort Vancouver settlement to the Indians would have been followed by the destruction of every American in the Oregon region. In fact, the American settlers at the Willamette would have perished of famine, but for the Hudson's Bay Company. It is a matter of surprise and congratulation, therefore, that for nearly 200 years England, through the instrumentality of an effectually organized association, has not only maintained a position in North America, but extended her power, and held in check, if not to some extent civilized or subdued thousands of savages, who have found that an English Company were their only friends.

The trade indeed is one of much hardship and privation.

Commodore Wilkes observes, 'that the Company's servants at the north posts suffer almost as much as the Indians at times, although they are provided for and attended to by the officers: they live mostly upon salmon. The difficulty of getting provisions to posts in the interior, is very great; all that is consumed at the north, is carried twenty-four days' journey on pack-horses, and eighteen days in barges before it reaches its destination; and the amount transported is not more than enough to supply the officers, whose allowance is very limited. The servants of

the Company receive an increased pay, as some recompence for their privations.'

Referring to the dangers and risks the officers and servants of the Hudson's Bay Company have to encounter from Indians, descending rapids, when an entire boat's crew are sometimes instantly destroyed, and to the toil and privation endured by the voyageurs, the Commodore says, at p. 391, 'the most experienced voyageur is taken as a pilot for the brigade, and he is the bowman of the leading boat, which is looked upon as a station of great trust and honour. Each boat has also its bowman, who is considered the first officer and responsible man; the safety of the boat, in descending rapids particularly, depends upon him and the padroon who steers the boat. They both use long and large blade-paddles; and it is surprising how much power the two can exert over the direction of the boat. These men, from long training, become very expert, and acquire a coolness and disregard of danger that claim admiration, and astonishes those who are unused to such scenes. To all appearance, there is seldom to be found a more laborious set of men; nor one so willing, particularly when their remuneration of no more than seventeen pounds sterling a-year, and the fare they receive, are considered. Very few of those who embark or join this Company's service, ever leave the part of the country they have been employed in; for after the expiration of five years, they usually enlist for three more. This service of eight years in a life of so much adventure and hazard, attaches them to it, and they generally continue until they become old men; when, being married, and having families by Indian women, they retire, under the auspices of the Company, to some small farm, either on the Red or Columbia Rivers. There is no allowance stipulated for their wives or children; but one is usually made, if they have been useful. If a man dies, leaving a family, although the Company is not under any obligation to provide for them, they are generally taken care of. *The officers of the Company are particularly strict in preventing its servants from deserting their wives; and none can abandon them without much secrecy and cunning.* In cases of

this sort, the individual is arrested, and kept under restraint until he *binds himself with security not to desert his family*. The chief officers of the Company hold the power of magistrates over their own people; and are bound to send fugitives or criminals back to Canada for trial, where the courts take cognizance of the offences. This, perhaps, is as salutary and effectual a preventive against crime as could be found, even if the courts were at hand; for whether innocent or guilty, the individual must suffer great loss by being dragged from the little property he possesses. The community of old voyageurs, settled in Oregon, are thus constrained to keep a strict watch upon their behaviour; and, although perhaps against their inclinations, are obliged to conform to the wishes of those whose employ they have left.' [P. 62.]

In the following passage we have an animated picture of life at Fort Vancouver, and of the cheerful and agreeable manner in which the officers and servants of the Company fulfil their duties:—'On the morning of the 17th, Vancouver was awake at an early hour, and preparations were actively making; a voyageur occasionally was to be seen, decked out in all his finery, feathers, and flowing ribands, tying on his ornamental leggings, sashes, and the usual worked tobacco and fire pouch. The latter is of the shape of a lady's reticule, and generally made of red or blue cloth, prettily worked with beads. In working them the wives of the officers of the Company exercise great taste, and it is deemed fully as essential a part of dress in a voyageur's wardrobe as in a lady's. The simple bag does not, however, afford sufficient scope for ornament, and it has usually several long tails to it, which are worked with silk of gaudy colours.

'The ladies of the country are dressed after our own bygone fashions, with the exception of leggings, made of red and blue cloth, richly ornamented. Their feet, which are small and pretty, are covered with worked mocassins. Many of them have a dignified look and carriage; their black eyes and hair, and ruddy brown complexion, combined with a pleasing expression, give an air of independence and usefulness that one little expects to see. As wives, they are spoken of as most devoted, and many of them

have performed deeds, in the hour of danger and difficulty, worthy of being recorded. They understand the characters of Indians well.

‘ About ten o’clock we were all summoned to the great dining-hall by Dr. Mc Laughlin, to take the parting cup, customary in this country. When all were assembled, wine was poured out, and we drank to each other’s welfare, prosperity, &c. This was truly a cup of good fellowship and kind feeling. This hanging to old Scotch customs, in the way it was done here is pleasant, and carries with it pleasing recollections, especially when there is that warmth of feeling with it that there was on this occasion. After this was over, we formed quite a cavalcade to the river-side, which was now swollen to the top of its banks, and rushing by with irresistible force.

‘ On reaching the river we found one of Mr. Ogden’s boats manned by fourteen voyageurs, all gaily dressed in their ribands and plumes; the former tied in large bunches of divers colours, with numerous ends floating in the breeze. The boat was somewhat of the model of our whale-boats, only much larger, and of the kind built expressly to accommodate the trade; they are provided yearly at Okonagan, and are constructed in a few days; they are clinker-built, and all the timbers are flat. These boats are so light, that they are easily carried across the portages. They use the gum of the pine to cover them instead of pitch.

‘ After having a hearty shake of the hand, Captain Varney, Mr. Ogden, and myself, embarked. The signal being given, we shoved off, and the voyageurs at once struck up one of their boat songs. After paddling up the stream for some distance we made a graceful sweep to reach the centre, and passed by the spectators with great animation. The boat and voyageurs seemed a fit object to grace the wide-flowing river. On we merrily went, while each voyageur in succession took up the song, and all joined in the chorus. In two hours and a half we reached the mouth of the Cowlitz, a distance of thirty-five miles.

‘ In the Cowlitz we found a strong current to contend against

and by night-fall had only proceeded twelve miles farther. As we encamped, the weather changed, and rain began to fall, which lasted till next morning.

‘ I had much amusement in watching the voyageurs, who are as peculiar in their way as sailors. I was struck with their studious politeness and attention to each other, and their constant cheerfulness.

‘ On the second day our voyageurs had doffed their finery, and their hats were carefully covered with oiled skins. They thus appeared more prepared for hard work. The current became every mile more rapid, and the difficulty of surmounting it greater. The management of the boats in the rapids is dexterous and full of excitement, as well to the passengers as to the voyageurs themselves. The bowman is the most important man, giving all directions, and is held responsible for the safety of the boat; and his keen eye and quick hand in the use of his paddle, delights and inspires a confidence in him in moments of danger that is given without stint. We did not make more than ten miles during the day, and were forced to encamp three miles below the farm.

‘ On the 19th we reached our destination. On our approach, although there were no spectators, except a few Indians, to be expected, the voyageurs again mounted their finery, and gaily chaunted their boat song.’ (*Wilkes' Narrative*, v. iv., p. 370.)

The Rev. S. Parker, who had an opportunity afforded him of witnessing the proceedings of the Hudson's Bay Company, whose sentiments had no reference to ulterior events, whose opinions were entirely unbiassed, and must be taken as the honest convictions of a mind desirous of truth, and ready to award the palm of merit where it is due, thus expresses himself in 1837:—‘ I have already mentioned my agreeable disappointment in finding so many of the comforts of life at different trading posts of the Hudson's Bay Company. I have also given a brief description of the local situation of Fort Vancouver. These were taken from such observations as I could make in a hasty view, as I was pro-

secuting my journey to the shores of the Pacific Ocean. This establishment was commenced in the year 1824. It being necessary that the gentlemen who are engaged in transacting the business of the Company west of the mountains, and their labourers, should possess a better and less precarious supply of the necessaries of life, than what game would furnish, and the expense of transporting suitable supplies from England being too great, it was thought important to connect the business of farming with that of fur, to an extent equal to their necessary demands; and as the Fort is the central place of business to which shipping come, and from which they depart for different parts of the north-west coast, and to which and from which brigades of hunting parties come and go, the principal farming business was established here, and has made such progress, that provisions are now produced in great abundance. There are large fertile prairies which they occupy for tillage and pasture, and the forests yield an ample supply of wood for fencing and other purposes. In the year 1835, there were at this post 450 neat cattle; 100 horses, 200 sheep, 40 goats, and 300 hogs. They had raised the same year 5000 bushels of wheat, of excellent quality; 1300 bushels of potatoes; 1000 of barley; 1000 of oats; 2000 of peas, and a great variety of garden vegetables. This estimate does not include the horses, horned cattle, grain, &c., raised at the other stations. But little, however, is done elsewhere, excepting at Colville, the uppermost post on the northern branch of the Columbia. The garden of this station contains about five acres, and is laid out with regularity and good taste. While a large part is appropriated to the common esculent vegetables, ornamental plants and flowers are not neglected. Fruit of various kinds, such as apples, peaches, grapes, and strawberries, considering the short time since they have been introduced, flourish, and prove that the climate and soil are well adapted to the purposes of agriculture. Various tropical fruits, such as figs, oranges, and lemons, have also been introduced, and thrive as well as in the latitude of Philadelphia.

‘ In connexion with their farming establishment, the Company



have a flour mill worked by ox-power, which is kept in constant operation, and produces flour of an excellent quality ; and a saw-mill with several saws, which is kept in operation most of the year. This mill, though large, does not with its several saws, furnish more lumber than a common mill would, with one saw, in the United States. There being no pine below the Cascades, and but very little within five hundred miles of the mouth of the Columbia River, the only timber sawn in this mill is fir and oak. Besides what timber is used in the common business about this station, one, and sometimes two ship-loads are sent annually to Oahu, Sandwich Islands, and is there called pine of the north-west coast. Boards of fir are not so durable, when exposed to the weather, as those of pine, nor so easily worked. One half of the grain of each annual growth is very hard, and the other half soft and spongy, which easily absorbs moisture, and causes speedy decay. There is a bakery here, in which two or three men are in constant employment, which furnishes bread for daily use in the fort, and also a large supply of sea-biscuit for the shipping and trading stations along the north-west coast. There are also shops for blacksmiths, joiners, and carpenters, and a tinner.

*' Here is a well-regulated medical department, and an hospital for the accommodation of the sick labourers, into which Indians, who are labouring under any difficult and dangerous diseases are received, and in most cases have gratuitous attendance.'*

' Among the large buildings, there are four for the trading department; one for the Indian trade, in which are deposited their peltries; one for provisions; one for goods, opened for the current year's business—that is, to sell to their men, and to send off to various fur stations; and another for storing goods in a year's advance. Not less than a shipload of goods is brought from England annually, and always at least one in advance of their present use; so that if any disaster should befall their ship on her passage, the business of the Company would not have to be suspended. By this mode of management, there is rarely less than two ship-loads of goods in hand, most of the time. The annual ship arrives in the spring, takes a trip to Oahu during

the summer, freighted with lumber, and bringing back to Fort Vancouver, salt and other commodities, but generally not enough for ballast; and, about the end of September, or early in October, she sails for England with the peltries obtained during the preceding year.

‘The fur business about the Rocky Mountains, and the West, is becoming far less lucrative than formerly; for so extensively and constantly have every nook and corner been searched out, that beavers, and other valuable fur animals, are becoming very scarce. It is rational to conclude that it will not be many years before this business will not be worth pursuing in the prairie country, south of the 50th degree of north latitude; but north of this, in the colder and more densely-wooded regions, the business will not probably vary in any important degree.

‘Very few Americans who have engaged in the fur business beyond the Rocky Mountains, have ever succeeded in making it profitable. Several companies have sustained great loss, generally owing to their ignorance of the country and the best mode of procedure. The Hudson’s Bay Company have so systematized their operations, that no one can have the charge of any important transactions without having passed through several grades of less important business, which constitutes several years’ apprenticeship. Their lowest order are what they call *servants* (common labourers). All above these are called *gentlemen*, but of different orders. The lowest class are clerks, then chief clerks; next traders and chief traders; factors and chief factors; and the highest, governors. There are only two chief factors west of the mountains, John M’Laughlen, Esq. and Duncan Finlayson, Esq., and with them are associated in business several chief traders and traders, and chief clerks and clerks. The salaries of the gentlemen are proportioned to the stations they occupy. By this mode of conducting business, no important enterprise is ever entrusted to an inexperienced person.

‘It is worthy of remark, that comparatively few of all those who engage in the fur business in these regions ever return to their native land. Mr. Pambrun, of Fort Walla-Walla, told me,

that to keep up their number of trappers and hunters west of the mountains, they were under the necessity of sending out recruits annually, about one third of the whole number. Captain Wyeth stated, that of more than two hundred who had been in his employment in the course of three years, only between thirty and forty were known to be alive. From these data it may be seen that the life of hunters in these far western regions averages about three years. And with these known facts, still hundreds and hundreds are willing to engage in the hunter's life, and expose themselves to hardships, famine, dangers, and death. It has been estimated, from sources of correct information, that there are nine thousand white men in the north and far west engaged in the various departments of trading, trapping, and hunting; and this number includes Americans, Britons, Frenchmen, and Russians.' —(*Journey beyond the Rocky Mountains*, p. 41, 42.)

Commodore Wilkes, adverting to the observations he heard regarding discontent among some of the junior servants of the Company,—to the discipline enforced, and to the powers exercised by the officers of the Company, says, '*I am satisfied that as far as the morals of the settlers and servants are concerned, it is used for good purposes.*' 'For instance, the use of spirits is almost entirely done away with. Dr. M'Laughlin has acted in a highly praiseworthy manner in this particular. Large quantities of spirituous liquors are now stored in the magazines at Vancouver, which the Company *have refused to make an article of trade*, and none is now used by them in the territory for that purpose. They have found this rule highly beneficial to their business in several respects; more furs are taken, and those who are engaged have fewer inducements to err; the Indians are found to be less quarrelsome, and pursue the chase more constantly; and the settlers, as far as I could hear, have been uniformly prosperous.'

'In order to show the course of the Company upon this subject, I will mention one circumstance. The brig *American* Thomas H. Perkins, arrived here with a large quantity of rum on board, with other goods. Dr. M'Laughlin, on hearing of this made overtures immediately for the purchase of the whole cargo,

in order to get possession of the whiskey or rum, and succeeded. The Doctor mentioned to me that the liquor was now in store, and would not be sold in the country, and added, that the only object he had in buying the cargo was to prevent the use of the rum, and to sustain the temperance cause.'

In their endeavours to prosecute a trade at any hazard, the American fur traders sell spirits freely to the Indians; and Mr. Greenhow states, that 'twenty dollars were frequently expended in rum and sugar, for a night's carouse, by two or three traders after the conclusion of a bargain.'

The Rev. S. Parker, the American clergyman, reprobates the dissolute life and cruel conduct of the Americans engaged in the Oregon fur trade, while he bears high testimony to the conduct of the Hudson's Bay Company.

In 1836-7, the Russian Government refused to allow vessels of the United States to trade on the unoccupied parts of the American coast north of 54° 40', on the grounds that, during the previous ten years, when the United States had the privilege, it enabled the traders to supply the natives on the coast with 'spirituous liquors and fire-arms.'

It appears from the narrative of Sir George Simpson, that in 1842, the Governors of the Hudson's Bay Company and of the Russian Fur Company, entered into a written agreement, that from and after the date of signature, no spirits should be supplied to the Indians at their respective stations or posts in North America; the Russian Governor fully acknowledging the evil done to the trade, as well as to the Indians themselves.

The effect of prohibiting spirituous liquors among the Indians is clearly shewn in documents laid officially before Lord Glenelg, in 1837.—(See page 15 of *Parliamentary Papers*, 8th August, 1842,) of which the following is an extract:—

'The Indian country, which, previous, to the passing and granting of that act and licence, was a scene of violence and outrage, productive of injury to the native population, and of the worst consequences, amounting in very many instances to the loss of life among the whites actively engaged therein, and to a

vast sacrifice of property to the parties interested, all arising from the violent competition that existed among the traders, I have the satisfaction to say, has, ever since that period, been in a state of the most perfect tranquillity, beneficial as well to the Indian population as to the parties interested and engaged in the trade.

‘ Previous to that period, an unrestricted supply of spirituous liquor, then an important article of trade, led to the commission of crimes, to the injury of health, and to a state of demoralization among the native population truly lamentable. The measures since taken by the Council in the country, under the instructions of the Board of Direction in England, to remedy those evils, have been attended with the happiest results : drunkenness is now of very rare occurrence in any part of the country, and quite unknown throughout the extended district situated to the northward of the Saskatchewan and Churchill Rivers, occupied by the Chipewyan, Beaver Indian, Cree, Yellow Knife, Hare, Dog Rib, and other tribes throughout the numerously inhabited and widely extended plain country to the southward of Saskatchewan ; in the country situated between the Rocky Mountains and the shores of the Pacific, watered by the Columbia River and its tributaries ; in the country known by the name of New Caledonia, situated inland, to the northward of the Columbia River ; and among the Chippewyan tribes on the shores and interior country of Lakes Superior and Huron ; the introduction and use of spirituous and other intoxicating liquors having been strictly prohibited, except in very rare cases for medicinal purposes.

‘ The first introduction of this measure was so unpopular among the natives, as to endanger the safety of the trading establishments, rendering it necessary to maintain a large force for their protection, at a heavy expense ; and it was only by compensating them for the loss of this baneful indulgence by large gratuities, consisting of presents of British manufacture, that they became reconciled to the privation. In other parts of the country, where it could not, in safety to the white population, be entirely prohibited, the use of it is now gradually diminishing, so as at this time to be no longer an evil ; and in no part of the countries

through which the Hudson's Bay Company's operations extend, are spirituous or intoxicating liquors of any description sold to Indians, or used as a medium of barter or trade. But so inseparable is drunkenness or the abuse of spirituous liquors, from opposition in the Indian trade, that on the north-west coast, where we have to contend with the Americans and Russians, and even on the banks of the St. Lawrence and Ottawa rivers, which are exposed to competition in trade, and where the Indians are partially civilized, I am sorry to say our utmost efforts to check it have been altogether unavailing.

'A confirmation of these statements is to be seen by reference to the exportations of spirituous liquors to Hudson's Bay, which, since the year 1821, do not exceed on the average forty-three puncheons of rum annually for the supply of the whole country situated to the eastward of the Rocky Mountains, comprised in the licence of trade granted to the Company, as well as the Company's territories, the population of which, including servants, may be estimated at 120,000 souls, no spirituous liquors having up to this period been distilled in the country.' [About a pint per annum for each individual.]

There is an honourable acknowledgment by Commodore Wilkes, that the small wages, and subjection complained of by the younger servants and clerks, is necessary; for 'few can in any way long withstand this silent influence; decorum and order are preserved, together with steady habits: the consequence is, that few communities are to be found more well behaved and orderly than that which is formed of persons who have retired from the Company's service.'—[Vol. ii., p. 330.]

The following statement of the chief of a party of Americans, consisting of about 300 persons, who emigrated from Pennsylvania and Missouri, for the 'Far West' in 1843, in order to settle in the Oregon country is deserving of attention: the writer fully confirms the opinions of Commodore Wilkes and others. 'On the 10th of November I arrived at Vancouver, and could scarcely believe my eyes when, on approaching it, I beheld, moored securely in the river, two square-rigged vessels and a steam-boat. My very heart

jumped as I set eyes on these familiar objects, and for the first time in four months, I felt as if I had found substantial evidence of civilization; the impression of the refinement of the mission, and the peculiarly domestic comforts which the ladies attached to the establishment spread around them, were as nothing compared with the yards and masts of these coursers of the ocean. The river at Fort Vancouver is from 1,600, to 1,700 yards wide; the fort, which is the principal establishment of the Hudson's Bay Company in Oregon, is on the north bank of the Columbia, 80 miles distance, in a direct line, from the sea. It stands a considerable distance back from the shore, and is surrounded by a large number of buildings, amongst which is a school-house. On the bank of the river, 600 yards down, is a village somewhat larger in extent, containing an hospital. Two miles farther down the river are the dairy and piggery, containing numerous herds of cattle, hogs, sheep, &c.; and about three miles above the forts are grist and saw-mills, and sheds for curing salmon. Immediately behind it is a garden and an orchard filled with peach, apple, fig, orange, lemon, and other fruit trees,—and containing also grapes, strawberries, ornamental plants and flowers. Behind this the cultivated farm, with its numerous barns and other necessary buildings,—spread off towards the south. The land appropriated here for the purposes of farming, is from 3000 to 4000 acres, and is fenced into beautiful fields, a great portion of which has already been appropriated to cultivation, and is found to produce the grains and vegetables of the States in remarkable profusion. On my arrival, I was received with great kindness by Dr. M'Laughlin, the chief factor of the Hudson's Bay Company; and Mr. Douglass, his second in command. *The modus operandi of this wonderful corporation is remarkable for the perfect accuracy of its system. A code of established rules, embracing within its scope the chief factor and the meanest dependent, is the inflexible rule which governs all. Every man has his allotted department to fill, and a system of far-sighted policy is brought to bear upon the management of every department. A regular price is set upon everything. Their goods*

*are all of the most superior kind, and it is no less a rule to sell them at reasonable rates than it is to have them good.'*

The documents in the Colonial Office, and at the War Office, and Admiralty, amply sustain these facts. Colonel Crofton's Report is in the strongest degree favourable to the Hudson's Bay Company.

Indeed, but for the exercise of strict discipline, the Company would not only have anarchy among their own people, but would be subject to great annoyance from their neighbours, who would endeavour to sow discontent and rebellion among their people. In 1836, a person styling himself 'General Dickson, of the Indian Liberating Army,' departed from Washington, and attended by several followers, made an effort to seduce the servants of the Company, with the pretended object of uniting all the Indians in one nation, of which Dickson was to be the chief, under the title of 'Montezuma the Second.' He was supplied with money by some Americans, in the expectation that he would damage the Hudson's Bay Company, and proceeded through the American territories to the region west of Lake Superior, the General, his Brigadier, Aide-de-Camps, &c., dressed in grand uniforms. Winter set in; and Dickson, with his toes frozen off, and in a wretched plight, attended by a few deluded followers, at length reached the Red River settlement, where the Hudson's Bay Company prevented them from starving, and, finally, took several into their employ as clerks and servants.

The manner in which the American fur hunters destroy the Indians, is thus described by an *American* clergyman:—

'On the 29th, removed our encampment, and travelled five hours along this valley, to the place where, two years before, two fur companies held their rendezvous. Pierre's Hole is an extensive level country, of rich soil, and well watered with branches of Lewis River; the climate is milder than any part we have gone through on this side of the mountains. The valley is well covered with grass, but like most other places, is deficient in woodland, having only a scanty supply of cotton-wood and willows scattered along the streams. The valley extends around to the north-west as far as the eye can reach. We expected to have found buffaloes



in this valley, but saw none. As parties of Blackfoot warriors often range this way, it was probable that they had lately been here and frightened them away. As we were on our way from our last encampment, I was shown the place where the men of the fur companies, at the time of their rendezvous two years before, had a battle with the Blackfoot Indians. Of the Blackfoot party, there were about sixty men, and more than the same number of women and children; of the white men in the valley there were some few hundreds who could be called into action. From the information given me, it appeared that these Indians were on their way through this valley, and unexpectedly met about forty hunters and trappers going out from rendezvous to the southwest on their fall and winter hunt. The Indians manifested an unwillingness to fight, and presented them tokens of peace, but they were not reciprocated. The Indians who came forward to stipulate terms of peace, were fired upon and killed. When the Indians saw their danger, they fled to the cotton-wood trees and willows which were scattered along the stream of the water, and, taking advantage of some fallen trees, constructed as good defences as time and circumstances would permit. They were poorly provided with guns, and still more poorly with ammunition. The trappers keeping out of reach of their arrows, and being well armed with the best rifles, rendered the contest unequal; and it was made still more unequal, when, by an express sent to rendezvous, they were reinforced by veterans in mountain life. The hunters, by keeping at a safe distance, in the course of a few hours killed several of the Indians, and almost all their horses, which they had no means of protecting, while they themselves suffered but small loss. The numbers killed on both sides have been differently stated; but considering the numbers engaged, and the length of time the skirmishing continued, it must have been a bloody battle, and not much to the honour of civilized Americans. The excuse made for forcing the Blackfeet into battle is, that if they had come upon a small party of trappers, they would have butchered them and seized upon the plunder. If heathen Blackfeet would have done so, is this an apology for civilized white

men to render evil for evil? What a noble opportunity this was for American citizens to have set an example of humanity!

‘When the night drew near, the hunters retired to their rendezvous, and the Indians made their escape.’—(*Journey beyond the Rocky Mountains*, by the Rev. S. Parker. Edin. Ed., 1841. P. 23.)

The same American authority adverts in another part of his Journal (pp. 19--21), to the ‘profligacy of the fur hunters.’ He says, ‘*the American Fur Company* have between two and three hundred men constantly employed, in and about the mountains, in trading, hunting, and trapping. These all assemble at a rendezvous, bring in their furs, and take new supplies for the coming year of clothing, ammunition, and goods for trade with the Indians. But few of them ever return to their country and friends. Most of them are constantly in debt, and are unwilling to return without a fortune; and year after year passes away while they are hoping for better success.’ The conduct and proceedings of the men engaged in the operations of this American Company—offers a marked contrast to that of the British Fur Company. The Rev. S. Parker speaking of these Americans says, at p. 21 :—‘A few days after our arrival at the place of rendezvous, and when all the mountain-men had assembled, another day of indulgence was granted to them, in which all restraint was laid aside. These days are the climax of the hunter’s happiness. I will relate an occurrence which took place near evening, as a specimen of mountain life. A hunter, who goes technically by the name of the Great Bully of the Mountains, mounted his horse with a loaded rifle, and challenged any Frenchman, American, Spaniard, or Dutchman, to fight him in single combat. Kit Carson, an American, told him, if he wished to die, he would accept the challenge. Shunar defied him; Carson mounted his horse, and with a loaded pistol rushed into close contact, and both almost at the same instant fired. Carson’s ball entered Shunar’s hand, came out at the wrist, and passed through the arm above the elbow. Shunar’s ball passed over the head of Carson, and while he went for another pistol, Shunar begged that his life might be spared. Such scenes, sometimes from passion

and sometimes for amusement, make the pastime of their wild and wandering life. They appear to have sought for a place where, as they would say, human nature is not oppressed by the tyranny of religion, and pleasure is not awed by the frown of virtue. The fruits are visible in all the varied forms to which human nature, without the restraint of civil government and cultivated and polished society, may be supposed to yield. In the absence of all those motives which they would feel in moral and religious society—refinement, pride, a sense of the worth of character, and even conscience—they give way to unrestrained dissoluteness. Their toils and privations are so great, that they are not disposed to take upon themselves the labour of climbing up to the temple of science. And yet they are proficient in one study, namely, profuseness of language in their oaths and blasphemy. They disdain the commonplace phrases which prevail among the impious vulgar in civilized countries, and have many set expletives, which they appear to have manufactured among themselves, and which in their imprecations, they bring into almost every sentence and on all occasions. By varying the tones of their voices, they make them expressive of joy, hope, grief, and anger. In their broils among themselves, which do not happen every day, they would not be ungenerous. They would see ‘fair play,’ and would ‘spare the last eye;’ and would not tolerate murder, unless drunkenness or great provocation could be pleaded in extenuation of guilt.

‘Their demoralizing influence with the Indians has been lamentable, and they have imposed upon them in all the ways that sinful propensities dictate. It is said they have sold them packs of cards at high prices, calling them the Bible; and have told them, if they should refuse to give white men wives, God would be angry with them, and punish them eternally: and on almost any occasion when their wishes have been resisted, they have threatened them with the wrath of God.’

The British rivals in the fur trade are now the American and the Russian Fur Companies, and it is our interest to do nothing to weaken the only association capable of preserving to England this valuable branch of traffic.

---

### Part III.

---

#### THE INDIAN POPULATION—THEIR NUMBERS—CHARACTER AND TREATMENT BY THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY.

---

NUMBERS.—It is difficult to form any estimate approaching to accuracy of the population of the territories of the Hudson's Bay Company, and also of the adjoining regions.

Sir George Simpson gives the following as a census of the Saskatchewan District, a country as large as England, which is said to be perhaps more numerously peopled with Indians than any other part of North-Western America :—

Tribes.	Tents.	Souls.
Crees . . .	500	3500
Assiniboines . . .	580	4060
Blackfeet . . .	300	2100
Peigans . . .	350	2450
Blood Indians . . .	250	1750
Sarcees . . .	50	350
Gros Ventres . . .	300	2100
Saulteaux . . .	20	140
Half-breeds . . .	40	280
	<hr/> 2390	<hr/> 16,730

—(Sir G. Simpson's *Overland Journey round the World*, vol. i., p. 102, published by Colburn in 1847.)

This shows a very scanty population, and gives only, on an average, seven persons to each tent. I cannot but think it is an under estimate; or, that this census includes only those who are stationary around the Company's posts.

In the following classification and distribution of the tribes in Rupert's Land, by the Bishop of Montreal, who appears to have paid much attention to the Indian population, we have no data of the actual number in each tribe. His Lordship says—' It appears that the discordant estimates, even of the oldest and most experienced residents in the Indian country, forbid all idea of arriving at an accurate knowledge of the amount of population, either as a whole or in detail. The tribes themselves, however, occupying the country east of the Rocky Mountains, and resorting upon occasion to the Company's establishments, may be enumerated and distinguished as follows below :—

*' Mackenzie's River District.*

' The Copper Indians, inhabiting the country about this river.

' The Loucheux, or Quarrellers.

' The Hare Indians.

' The Dog-rib Indians.

' The Strong-bow Indians, inhabiting Mackenzie's River District, and speaking different languages.

*' Athabasca and Isle à la Crosse Districts.*

' The Chipewyans, and a few of the Cree tribe; inhabiting the country surrounding this lake, and between it and the Isle à la Crosse District.

*' Peace River District.*

' The Beaver Indians, and a few Sauteux from the Rainy Lake, inhabiting both sides of this river, and speaking a language different from that of the Chipewyans of Athabasca.

*' Upper part of the Saskatchewan District.*

' The Blackfeet Proper.

' The Blood Indians.

' The Piegans.

' The Fall Indians.

‘ The Surcies.

‘ All these five tribes are generally termed Blackfeet, although they speak different languages, and have different customs and manners.

‘ *Lower part of the Saskatchewan District.*

‘ The Stone Indians, or Assiniboin.

‘ The Crees.

‘ The Sautaux, or Ogibways.

‘ These three tribes are constantly at variance with the Blackfeet, and the whole eight depend on the chase for subsistence. They, *i. e.* the three tribes, extend their habitations also to the upper part of Red River and of Swan River.

‘ *York Factory, Oxford, Norway House, Cumberland, and lower part of Swan River District.*

‘ Mis-Kee-Goose, or Swampy Indians.

‘ These also extend along the sea-coast to James’s Bay. They evidently spring from the Crees, as their language is only a dialect of the Cree. There is said to be a mixture of the Sautaux in their origin.

‘ *Churchill District.*

‘ Esquimaux.

‘ Chipewyans, and a few Swamp Indians, inhabiting the country to the north of Churchill.

‘ These are all the tribes on the east side of the Rocky Mountains who trade respectively at the ports indicated by italics. The source from which I received this information is one upon which I feel that I can rely; and with the exception of the Mackenzie’s River District, respecting which the statements are less positively made, the whole account, I believe, is the result of personal acquaintance with the localities.

‘ The Indians in James’s Bay are generally classed with the Mis-kee-goose, and inhabit the countries about Albany, Moose, and East Main.”—(*Bishop of Montreal’s Journal*, pp. 130 to 133.)

Mr. Greenhow, in the *History of Oregon*, estimates the number of all the tribes inhabiting the Oregon region, in which he includes

all the country watered by the Columbia River, as not exceeding 20,000; the Clatsops and Chenooks occupying the country on both sides of the lower part of the great river; the Killamucks of the Umqua, the Classets, the territory of the Straits of Fuca, the Enishurs, mauraders infesting the passes about the falls of the great river; the Chopunish or Nezpercés of the Walla-Walla and Kooskooskee countries; the Kotanies of Clarke's River, and the Shoshones or Snake Indians of the Lewis Rivers. In the part of the Oregon, north-west of the Columbia, are the Chilcotins or Talcotins, between whom a mortal enmity has always existed. The Blackfeet from the north-east make inroads on the Shoshones and Chopunish tribes.

The nearest approach to accuracy of the number of inhabitants in any of the north-west regions is given in an official report of Lieutenants Warre and Vavasour, as a 'Census of the Indian Tribes in the Oregon territory from latitude 42° to latitude 54°, derived from the trading lists of the Hudson's Bay Company, and from the best obtainable information.'

*Fort Vancouver, 1845.*

Name of the Tribe.	Where situated.	Males.	Females	Slaves.	Total.
Quacott.—Nuvette and 27 others. Tribes speaking generally the Quacott language.	From Lat. 54° to Lat. 50° including Queen Charlotte's Island; North end of Vancouver's Island, Milbank Sound and Island, and the Main shore . . . . .	19,020	20,215	1,570	40,805
Massettes and 13 tribes, not included with the above, and speaking different languages.	On Queen Charlotte's Island, not included in the above	3,232	3,381	..	6,613
Nass Indians, 4 tribes, speaking the same language.	Nass River on the Main Land . . . . .	857	746	12	1,615
Chymeyans, 10 tribes, all of whom speak the same language, with a different idiom.	Chatham Sound, Portland Canal, Port Essington, and the neighbouring Islands	1,202	1,225	68	2,495
Skeena Indians, 2 tribes.	At the Mouth of the Skeena River . . . . .	195	120	7	322
Labassas Indians, 5 tribes.	Gardner's Canal, Canal de Principe, Canal de la Reida . . . . .	717	601	111	1,429
	Carried forward..				

Name of the Tribes.	Where situated.	Males.	Females.	Slaves.	Total.
Milbank Sound, 9 tribes.	Brought forward.. Milbank Sound, Caceade Canal, Deane Canal, Salmon River, and the Islands on the Coast . . . . .	784	797	47	1,628
Challams.—Cowaitchims, 24 tribes, speaking the Challam and Cowaitchim languages.	From lat. 50° along the Coast South to Whitby Island in lat. 48°; part of Vancouver's Island and the Mouth of Franc's River . . . . .	3,176	3,383	2,868	9,427
New Caledonia Indians,—(8 tribes known).	M'Leod's Lake, Chelertins, Fort George, Alexandria, in Fraser's River, Conally Lake, Babine Lake, Fraser's Lake, Stuart's Lake . . . . .	1,265	1,150	210	2,625
Sanetch Indians, 3 tribes.	Straits of St. Juan de Fuca and Vancouver's Islands .				
Children under 12 years . . . . .	99	194	152	..	445
Hallams, 11 tribes.	Ditto.				
Children under 12 years . . . . .	467	517	461	40	1,485
Sinahomish, 1 tribe.	Ditto.				
Children under 12 years . . . . .	230	208	118	13	569
Skatcat, 1 tribe.	Ditto.				
Children under 12 years . . . . .	191	173	161	18	543
Cowitchici, 7 tribes.	Ditto.				
Children under 12 years . . . . .	585	524	636	..	1,763
Soke Indians, 1 tribe.	Ditto.				
Children under 12 years . . . . .	12	39	39	..	90
Cowiteiher, 3 tribes, not as yet ascertained . . . . .	say	..	..	..	300
Cape Flattery.—Gulf of Georgia Indians, exact numbers not ascertained.	. . . . . about	..	..	..	1,250
Nasqually, 13 tribes.	Nasqually River and Puget's Sound . . . . .	1,835	1,997	182	4,014
Two tribes in the Cavletz River . . . . .	. . . . . about	..	..	..	500
Cheenooks, Clatsops & several tribes near the entrance of the Columbia River.	Mouth of the Columbia River and the vicinity . .	..	..	..	429
Trile Kalets, several tribes.	Near Fort Vancouver in the Columbia . . . . .	..	..	..	500
Vule Puyas, several tribes.	Valley of the Williamatu River . . . . .	..	..	..	300
Clakamus, several tribes.	Valley of the Clakamus and the Willamuta Falls . .	..	..	..	200
Cheanooks, Kelussuyas, 4 tribes.	Pillar Rock, Oak Point, The Dallas, The Cascades, Cheate River, Takama River on the Columbia .	..	..	..	800
Killamooks, 3 tribes.	On the Sea Coast, between the River Columbia and the Umqua . . . . .	..	..	..	1,500
Clamets, several tribes.	Roquas River near the South Boundary . . . . .	..	..	..	800
	Carried forward..				



Name of the Tribe.	Where situated.	Males.	Females	Slaves.	Total.
	Brought forward..				
Walla - Walla, Nez Perce, Snakes, and several tribes.	One of the South or Snakes Branch of the Columbia, extending to near the Rocky Mountains . . .	..	..	..	3,000
Colville and Spokane.	Near Fort Colville on the Columbia . . . . .	..	..	..	450
Okanagan, several tribes.	On the Okanagan and Pisco Rivers . . . . .	..	..	..	300
Kullas-Palus, several tribes.	On the Flathead or Clarke River . . . . .	..	..	..	300
Kootoonais, several tribes.	On M'Gillivray's River, the Flat Bow Lake, &c. . .	..	..	..	450
	Total . . . . .	33,956	35,182	5,146	86,947

#### RECAPITULATION.

Males 33,956  
 Females 35,182  
 Children 1,584 of both sexes under twelve years of age.  
 Slaves 5,146

Total 75,868 of whom an accurate Census has been made.  
 11,079 estimate of tribes of whom no Census has been taken.

Gt. Total 86,947 Indian population, from latitude 42° to latitude 54° north.'

This Census is accompanied by the following remarks :—

'The gentleman in charge of the Hudson's Bay Company's posts on the north of the Columbia, have made very accurate estimates of the Indian population in the neighbourhood of their several stations ; and we have every reason to believe, from our own observations, in the accuracy of these statements.

'The Indian tribes on the Columbia, and in the interior of the country, are a very migratory race, and it is very difficult to arrive at their exact numbers. We believe the above statements to be rather under their numerical strength.

‘ The accompanying amount of the population of the Indian tribes has been compiled with great care from the best authorities we could obtain, and from the trading lists lent us by the kindness of the gentlemen in charge of the Hudson’s Bay Company.

‘ The Indians of Puget’s Sound and the Straits of De Fuca, also those farther to the north, appear to be more numerous than those of the interior, and cultivate large quantities of potatoes, &c. for their own use, and to barter with the vessels frequenting the coast.

‘ They are not so cleanly as the Indians of the prairies, nor are they so brave or warlike. Many of the latter tribes are a very fine race of men, and possess large herds of cattle and immense numbers of horses. In the neighbourhood of Walla-Walla, individual Indians were pointed out to us who owned more than 1000 horses.

‘ Slavery is common with all the tribes ; and he who possesses most slaves and the largest number of horses, is considered the greatest chief.

‘ The Indians of the North are sometimes troublesome, but those of the Columbia are a quiet, inoffensive, but very superstitious race. To this last cause may be traced their quarrels with the white man and with one another.

‘ They are well armed with rifles, muskets, &c., but, from policy, they are much stinted by the Hudson’s Bay Company in ammunition.

‘ The Indian tribes do not remain upon the same ground during the whole year. In the summer they resort to the principal rivers and the sea coast, where they take and lay by large quantities of salmon, &c. for their winter consumption, retiring to the smaller rivers of the interior during the cold season.

‘ Neither the Roman Catholic nor Methodist Missionaries have done much towards reclaiming the Indian population, who are an idle, dissolute race, and very few of them can be induced to change their mode of life, or cultivate more than will absolutely keep them from starvation.

*‘ The total abolition of the sale of intoxicating liquors has done much for the good of the whole community, white population as well as Indian, and so long as this abstinence (which can*

*hardly be called voluntary) continues, the country will prosper. When this prohibition is withdrawn, and the intercourse with the world open, such is the character of the dissolute and only partially reformed American and Canadian settlers, that every evil must be anticipated, and the unfortunate Indian will be the first to suffer.*

(Signed)

HENRY WARRE,  
*Lieutenant and Adjutant.*

M. VAVASSEUR,  
*Lieutenant Royal Engineers.'*

It is due to the Company to state, that they have never had any direct or continued warfare with the Indians.

CHARACTER OF THE INDIAN POPULATION.—It is difficult to describe the character of the various tribes referred to in the preceding classifications; they have each some recognised difference, and are most of them in a constant state of warfare with each other. The Sarcees are said to be the boldest. All have horses and fire-arms, and horse-stealing is a favourite occupation with them. The Crees and Blackfeet have deadly feuds, and each combat with the Assiniboins; small tribes are drawn into the contests of the larger, and the whole are never at peace. Ambuscades, surprises by day or night, and treacherous massacres of the old and young, of women and the sick, constitute the moving interests of their lives. No hardships or inducements will make them settle and cultivate their land, and until they do so, it is almost hopeless to expect any Christian results from the humane efforts of the Hudson's Bay Company and the missionaries. The most degrading superstitions prevail; cunning is employed where force cannot be used in plunder; lying is systematic; woman is treated as a beast; and the wild Indian is, in many respects, more savage than the animals around him.

The Crees are the largest tribe or nation of Indians, and are divided into two branches, the Crees on the Saskatchewan, and the Swampies around the borders of Hudson's Bay, from Fort Churchill to East Main. Forty years ago, in consequence of their early obtainment of fire-arms, they carried their victories to the arctic circle and across the Rocky Mountains, and treated as slaves the

Chipewyans, Yellow Knives, Hares, Dogribs, Loucheaux, Nikanies, Dahotanies, and other tribes in the adjoining regions.

The measles and small pox have swept off many from 1810 to 1820, but they are now extending to the south in various bands, and again increasing in numbers.

The Salteaux, a branch of the Chippewyans, were formerly the most powerful tribe in the country, but measles and small pox have dwindled their numbers down to 3000 or 4000, and though scattered over a vast territory, which produces wild rice in abundance, they can scarcely keep body and soul together; they are too indolent and too proud to become, as they loftily express it, 'troublers of the earth.' Gambling is a prevailing passion, especially with the New Caledonia savages. In some tribes, if a chief be ill, he causes one of his people to be shot, and if he recovers, it is attributed to the sacrifice. Sometimes a chief pretends to madness, and bites every one that falls in his way. In filth and sensuality the Indians, especially the more southern races, exceed probably any of the savages in other parts of the world. In some places on the north-west coast, says Sir George Simpson, they eat the dead bodies of their relatives.—(Vol. i., p. 207.)

A few years ago a large encampment of the Gros Ventres and Blackfeet was located on the Southern Saskatchewan to hunt the buffalo; the younger warriors, however, made an incursion into the country of the Assiniboines, but, on returning with the scalps and spoils of their enemies, they found revenge had been taken by the massacre of their defenceless wives and children, parents and sisters. So long as the Indians are in the power of the Europeans, they are perfectly good humoured, but, whenever they find they are the strongest, a different conduct is pursued; and unless treated with firmness, they are sure to commence aggression. In the straits around Vancouver's Island, they have not hesitated to attack European boats, and near Nisqually they assassinated one of the Company's officers and five men, on their way from Fort Langley to Fort Vancouver. Not long since, seizing Europeans, to be ransomed for guns, gunpowder, blankets, &c., was considered to be fair game by

the Indians, and they are only now kept in awe throughout the whole country by the courage, mingled with policy, of the servants of the Company.

Hearne, in the work descriptive of his journey to the Northern Ocean, says—‘When any really distressed objects present themselves at the Company’s factory, they are always relieved with victuals, clothes, medicines, and every other necessary, gratis; and, in return, they instruct every one of their countrymen how to behave in order to obtain the same charity.’ The Indians are great adepts at deception, never at a loss for a plausible story, have abundance of sighs, groans, and tears at command, feign to be lame, and even blind, to excite pity, and use so many false pretences to obtain charity, that it requires a great discrimination to ascertain real distress, and turn a deaf ear, otherwise the whole of the Company’s goods might be given away, begging would become the most profitable trade, and the hunting for, and traffic in, furs, would cease. They are always disposed to steal anything they think will be serviceable, particularly iron hoops, spikes, carpenters’ tools, &c., either for their own use, or for the purpose of trading with such of their countrymen as seldom visit the Company’s stations.

The description given by Hearne, of the character of the Northern Indians, will serve for many other tribes. ‘It may be truly said that they possess a considerable degree of deceit, and are very complete adepts in the art of flattery, which they never spare as long as they find that it conduces to their interest, but not a moment longer. They take care always to seem attached to a new Governor, and flatter his pride, by telling him that they look up to him as the father of their tribe, on whom they can safely place their dependence; and they never fail to depreciate the generosity of his predecessor, however extensive that might have been, however humane and disinterested his conduct; and if aspersing the old, and flattering the new Governor, has not the desired effect in a reasonable time, they represent him as the worst of characters, and tell him to his face that he is one of the most cruel of men; that he has no feeling for the distresses of their tribe, and that many have perished for

want of assistance (which, if it be true, is only owing to want of humanity among themselves), and then they boast of having received ten times the favours and presents from his predecessor. It is remarkable that those are most lavish in their praises, who have never either deserved or received any favours from him. In time, however, this language also ceases, and they are perfectly reconciled to the man whom they would willingly have made a fool, and say, 'he is no child, and not to be deceived by them.'

'They differ so much from the rest of mankind, that harsh, uncourteous usage seems to agree better with the generality of them, particularly the lower class, than mild treatment; for if the least respect be shown them, it makes them intolerably insolent; and though some of their leaders may be exempt from this imputation, yet there are but few even of them who have sense enough to set a proper value on the favours and indulgencies which are granted to them while they remain at the Company's factories, or elsewhere within their territories. Experience has convinced me, that by keeping a Northern Indian at a distance, he may be made serviceable both to himself and the Company; but by giving him the least indulgence at the factory, he will grow indolent, inactive, and troublesome, and only contrive methods to tax the generosity of an European.'—(Pp. 308, 309.)

Aged parents are treated not only with entire neglect, but also with contempt by their children, and it is calculated that at least one-half of the aged of both sexes are left to starve, and do perish of cold or want. The Bishop of Montreal thus portrays the appearance of the Indians whom he saw *en route* to the Red River: 'Their actual condition presents a most degrading picture of humanity. Some of them came up to us in dirty blankets, or dirtier dresses of worn and tattered hareskins; others were totally naked, except the waist-cloth; their heads, with scarcely an exception, protected only by an enormous mass of long black hair; others, in the encampments, who appeared to be persons of some distinction, and whose attire was in better order, were tricked out more like bedlamites than rational beings; a silly and indiscri-

minating passion for ornament prompting them to turn to this account whatever frippery they can become possessed of; so that the thimbles, for example, which they procure from the Company, are seen dangling at the end of long thin braids of hair which hang from the men's foreheads: some have feathers stuck into their hair, and these, perhaps, bent into an imitation of horns, with others appended to resemble the ears of an animal: many have their faces painted, all the lower part of the visage being made perfectly black, and the eyes encircled with bright vermillion: but it would be impossible to describe the varieties of their costume, or their fantastic decorations; and there they sit, or rather squat, smoking and basking in the sun the livelong day, sunk in an indolence from which nothing seems to rouse them but the excitement of war or the chase. Every species of labour and drudgery, in the meantime, is thrown entirely upon the women; and if an Indian travels on foot with his family, all the load which is to be carried, is consigned to the back of his wife or wives, for he does not always content himself with one. We were particularly struck with the appearance of one savage, who, squatting, with his whole figure in a heap, upon the point of a projecting rock which overhung the river, perfectly naked and perfectly motionless, staring down upon us out of the hair which buried his head and covered his shoulders, looked like some hideous idol of the East.'—(*Journal*, pp. 35—37.)

In reference to the character of the Indians, the Bishop says, 'their passion for liquor is well known, but *it is a great blessing that the Hudson's Bay Company have adopted measures to withhold from them this devastating curse.*' 'Some of them are practised thieves; they appear very generally to be inveterate gamblers, and will strip themselves of every article they possess, in the unsuccessful pursuit of this passion.' 'Europeans, in some points of view, have done them unspeakable mischief; but, as matters are now conducted, their condition is ameliorated by their partial assimilation to the whites. *Those who are attached to the forts are far more comfortable in their appearance than others.*'

The Bishop adverts to the 'scenes of blood and treachery

from hereditary and cherished feuds; the trophies of the scalping knife; the exposure of infants; the abandonment of helpless objects, when found burthensome, to perish in the wilds.' And his Lordship adds his valuable testimony, that 'the influence of the Hudson's Bay Company has been exerted, no doubt successfully, to a certain extent, to check some of these practices, and more decisively, I believe, for the discontinuance of certain horrid barbarities exercised upon the widows of Indian warriors, as an established custom, and upon captive slaves at the will of their masters.'—(Pp. 136, 137.)

Captain Franklin says that the 'Stone Indians are grossly and habitually treacherous, generally at war with the neighbouring tribes, and never fail to take the scalps of their prisoners as trophies. They abuse the rights of hospitality by waylaying and plundering the very guest who had been apparently received with kindness, and just departed from their tents.'—(*Quarterly Review*, No. lvi., p. 379.)

Mr. Greenhow says, that 'Missionaries of various Christian sects have long been labouring with little profit, as it would appear from all accounts. The Roman Catholics appear to content themselves with administering baptism, and whole tribes submit at once to the rite.'

It is too much the habit to invest savages with all the better traits of humanity, and to say that they are injured by civilization, when in fact savages are more ferocious to each other than are the wild beasts of the forest. The Rev. S. Parker says, in his *Journal*, at p. 27—'I passed to-day a place which presented a very mournful scene, where two years ago thirty Nez Percé young men, who were killed by the Blackfeet, had been buried. They were all active young men, going out upon some expedition, the nature of which I could not learn. They had gone but a little way from the village which encamped here, when, passing through a very narrow defile on a small stream of water, walled up on both sides with perpendicular rocks, the Blackfeet Indians, who had waylaid them, attacked them from before and behind, and killed all but one, who mounted a horse belonging to the Blackfeet, and forced his way through the opposing enemy. After the Blackfeet Indians had retired from the place of



slaughter, the Nez Percés brought away the dead bodies and buried them in this place. According to their mode, they buried with them their clothes, blankets, and buffalo robes, in graves only about three feet deep, putting five or six bodies in a grave. Some time after this the Blackfeet Indians came and dug them up, and made plunder of their blankets and whatever they thought worth taking. The Nez Percés some time afterwards came this way, and collected their bones and buried them again. The graves in which they were first buried were open when we passed, and fragments of garments were lying about. Here my Indians halted, and mourned in silence over their slaughtered sons and brothers.' The 'Blackfeet' tribe are found in different posts of the Hudson's Bay Company's territories, and require to be carefully watched.

The aborigines of the North-West Archipelago, 'are universally described as daring and ferocious in the extreme, but possessing greater self-command, by which they conceal their intentions until prepared to act. The history of the fur trade in the North Pacific presents innumerable instances of their cruelty and treachery towards foreigners visiting their coasts, and many vessels have been taken by them, and all on board murdered in an instant, without the previous occurrence of anything calculated to excite suspicion.' Mr. Greenhow adds, 'there are many reasons for believing that these people are cannibals, though it seems probable they only eat the bodies of their enemies killed in war.'—(*Geography of Oregon*, pp. 32, 33.)

The Ballabollas at Fort McLoughlin, some of whose canoes, cut out of a single tree, are 60 feet long, by  $6\frac{1}{2}$  broad and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  deep, and carry an hundred men, had a deadly feud with the Hydra tribe of Queen Charlotte's Island, when Sir G. Simpson was on the coast in 1842. The Ballabollas, to the number of 300, went in their canoes, and butchered all the inhabitants of a village of the Hydás, except a man and a woman, who were carried off as living trophies.

The *Londonderry Sentinel* of 23rd September, 1848, contains an article from the *Journal du Havre*, which gives a detailed account of the 'Massacre of an entire community of Protestant Missionaries who have been settled in Columbia for more than ten years, by an

Indian tribe termed the Cayouses.' The Rev. Dr. Whiteman and his wife were among the first victims. Dysentery had carried off several of the Indians, and the Indians supposed that the Whites had destroyed them in order to obtain sole possession of the country. It is mentioned in the above statement that Mr. Abernethy, the Governor of Columbia, had, with the concurrence of the Oregon Legislative Council, authorised a levy of 500 volunteers to punish the Cayouses. The information concludes with the following passage :—' Vengeance is less an object than to prevent this sad example being followed by the neighbouring tribes, among whom the Society of Missionaries have founded numerous establishments without gaining the sympathy of the people, or bringing about a reform sufficiently deep-rooted to prevent cause for continually fearing a return to the ferocity of savage life. We are assured that the Hudson's Bay Company has, on its part, sent a considerable reinforcement to Walla-Walla. The question is, whether they will arrive soon enough to prevent the recurrence of such a misfortune.'

Slavery exists extensively among the Indians of the Oregon and in New Caledonia, but the establishment of the Company's forts is effecting a considerable change, by introducing commercial operations; and, by facilitating traffic, one of the best guarantees for peace is established even among savages.

It may afford some idea of the difficulty which a British well-organized association must have in dealing with the Indians, and how impossible it would be for isolated traders to carry on traffic in those regions when the state of slavery is known, by which the master is brutalized even more than the unhappy victim of his avarice and cruelty. Sir G. Simpson, in describing the tribes on the north-west coast, among the Hudson's Bay Company's forts, furnishes the following harrowing account of the condition of their slaves: ' These thralls are just as much the property of their masters as so many dogs, with this difference against them, that a man of cruelty and ferocity enjoys a more exquisite pleasure in tasking, or starving, or torturing, or killing, a fellow creature, than in treating any one of the lower animals in a similar way. Even in the most inclement

weather, a mat or a piece of deer-skin is the slave's only clothing, whether by day or night, whether under cover or in the open air. To eat without permission, in the very midst of an abundance which his toil has procured, is as much as his miserable life is worth ; and the only permission which is ever vouchsafed to him is, to pick up the offal thrown out by his unfeeling and imperious lord. Whether in open war or in secret assassination, this cold and hungry wretch invariably occupies the post of danger.'

' But all this is nothing when compared with the purely wanton atrocities to which these most helpless and pitiable children of the human race are subjected. They are beaten, lacerated, and maimed—the mutilating of fingers or toes, the splitting of noses, the scooping out of eyes, being ordinary occurrences. They are butchered, without the excuse or the excitement of a gladiatorial combat, to make holidays ; and, as if to carry persecution beyond the point at which the wicked are said to cease from troubling, their corpses are often cast into the sea, to be washed out and in by the tide. To show how diabolically ingenious the masters are in the work of murder, six slaves, on the occasion of a late merrymaking at Sitka, were placed in a row, with their throats over a sharp ridge of rock, while a pole, loaded with a chuckling demon at either end, ground away at the backs of their necks till life was extinct. What a proof of the degrading influence of oppression, that men should submit in life to treatment from which the black bondmen of Cuba or Brazil would be glad to escape by suicide !'—(Vol. i., p. 243.) The chiefs not unfrequently revenge themselves on each other by slaying the slaves when unguarded. The Sebassamen, a numerous tribe, are said to consist chiefly of runaway slaves, who are always received with open arms by their chief.

Fort Simpson, one of the Company's establishments, in latitude 54° 30' north, longitude 130° 30' west, situated on a peninsula, washed on three sides by Chatham Sound, and Port Essington and Works' Canal, are the resort of a great number of Indians ; about 14,000 of various tribes, such as the Chunseans, from Naas River, the Sebassamen, from Banks' Island, those of Queen Charlotte's Island, and many

from the Russian territories. All these Indians are turbulent and fierce, and have frequent fights with each other, arising from gambling quarrels or neglect of points of etiquette. About 800 of the Chuneans have settled under the protection of the guns of the fort.

The Russian Indians until recently obtained with facility spirits from the Russian Company in exchange for skins, and the demoralizing effect was seen among them, and also in the tribes contiguous in the British territory.

The admiration of the Indians for the superior skill and ingenuity of the Europeans is one great cause of the awe with which the Hudson's Bay Company's forts and officers are viewed, and in some measure explains the security of a handful of men scattered in different forts or stockaded ports over a vast territory inhabited by thousands of warlike people, among whom they are continually travelling in small bands, laden with (to the Indians) precious treasures.

Sir George Simpson thus illustrates the effect produced by the Hudson's Bay Company's Steamer, *Beaver*, in which he navigated the intricate waters of the North-Western Archipelago, from the Straits of Fuca to Sitka. 'According to the whole tenour of my journal, this labyrinth of waters is peculiarly adapted for the powers of steam. In the case of a sailing vessel, our delays and dangers would have been tripled and quadrupled; a circumstance which raised my estimate of Vancouver's skill and perseverance at every step of my progress. But, independently of physical advantages, steam, as I have already mentioned, may be said to exert an almost superstitious influence over the savages; besides acting without intermission on their fears, it has, in a great measure, subdued their very love of robbery and violence. In a word, it has inspired the red man with a new opinion, new not in degree but in kind, of the superiority of his white brother.

'After the arrival of the emigrants from Red River, their guide, a Cree of the name of Bras Croche, took a short trip in the *Beaver*. When asked what he thought of her, 'Don't ask me,' was his reply; 'I cannot speak; my friends will say I tell lies when I let them

know what I have seen ; Indians are fools, and know nothing ; I can see that the iron machinery makes the ship to go, but I cannot see what makes the iron machinery itself to go.' Bras Croche, though very intelligent, and, like all the Crees, partially civilized, was, nevertheless, so full of doubt and wonder, that he would not leave the vessel till he got a certificate to the effect, that he had been on board of a ship which needed neither sails nor paddlers. Though not one of his countrymen would understand a word of what was written, yet the most sceptical among them would not dare to question the truth of a story which had a document in its favour. A savage stands nearly as much in awe of paper, pen, and ink, as of steam itself ; and, if he once puts his cross to any writing, he has rarely been known to violate the engagement which such writing is supposed to embody or to sanction. To him the very look of black and white is a powerful 'medicine.'—(Vol. i., p. 242.)

Time, prudence, courage, moral power, and probity, have contributed to make the name of the Hudson's Bay Company respected and feared throughout these wide-spread regions ; but in several instances life has been lost, and great dangers incurred in establishing the stations or forts. Three or four posts which had been established by the Company on the Bow River, or Southern branch of the Saskatchewan, which was frequented by hostile tribes, were abandoned ; and, in 1822, the Company sent a flying expedition into the same country, at an expense of £.10,000, but were obliged to retire with considerable loss in the ensuing year. Fort Pett, after being established ten years, was compelled, on account of its being visited by Crees, Assiniboines, and Blackfeet, to keep, both day and night, the system of watch and ward, which the older forts had abandoned.

The exceptions to the general character of the Indians are few, and when any are met with by the Company's servants, they are highly prized and respected.

TREATMENT OF THE INDIANS.—The exclusive rights possessed by the Company have prevented that destruction of the native population in Rupert's Land, which has taken place in every other part

of the American Continent, and in the adjacent islands. At the British Settlements of Australia, Van Diemen's Land, South Africa, &c., the aborigines are fast perishing, and in Van Diemen's Island are utterly exterminated. But, as Mr. Greenhow and other Americans truly state, the preservation of the Indian population, and the animals on which they subsist, is a matter of the most careful attention from a humane feeling, as well as from motives of mercantile consideration. If the fur-bearing or food-yielding animals be recklessly destroyed, either out of season, when bearing young, or indiscriminately without reference to sex or age, the Company in the long run would be the principal sufferers;—so also, if the Indian population be kept in ignorance, barbarism, and crime, the expenses of repression, of protection against theft and violence,—and the losses consequent upon non-payment of advances, must fall upon the Company. It is therefore for their immediate and permanent advantage that the Indian population be reclaimed from savage life,—that they be preserved from the effects of extreme cold, and privation of food, by a due and well-regulated protection,—that they be induced by examples of good faith, of honourable treatment, and of kind consideration, to rely on the promises, and to respect the persons and property of the Hudson's Bay Company.

The conduct of the Hudson's Bay Company indeed presents a marked contrast to that which has taken place in the United States, and in our own territories of the Crown. 'In Newfoundland, as in other parts of America, it seems to have been for a length of time a meritorious act to kill an Indian.'—(*Report of Aborigines' Parliamentary Committee in 1837*).

Newfoundland was once very densely peopled by Indians, who even recently 'run up fences to the extent of 30 miles' for deer; but the aborigines have been utterly destroyed by the English settlers. The last of the tribes, a man and a woman, were shot by two Englishmen in 1823.

In Upper Canada, a converted Chippeway chief, addressing Lord Goderich, says, 'We were once very numerous, and owned all Upper Canada, and lived by fishing and hunting; but the white men who

came to trade with us, taught our fathers to drink the fire waters, which has made our people poor and sick, and has killed many tribes, till we have become very small.' These once numerous people are now a degraded race, and reduced to a state resembling that of the Gypsies in England.

In 1825 the Indians in New Brunswick were reduced to a few, and in a 'wretched condition.' The same occurred in Nova Scotia.

The Cree Indians, in the north-west territories, once a powerful tribe, have been reduced in 30 years from 10,000 to 200, and much degenerated. But, adds the *Aborigines Report* of 1837, 'it should be observed that this tribe had access to posts not comprehended within the *Hudson's Bay Company's prohibition as to the introduction of spirituous liquors*, and they miserably show the effects of the privilege.' 'The Copper Indians also, through ill management, intemperance, and vice, are said to have decreased within the last five years to one-half the number of what they were.' (*Aborigines Report*, House of Commons, 1837). In Guyana, New Holland, Kaffraria, New Zealand, &c., we see how the aborigines have been treated, and how they have sunk and degenerated.

The Company, despite of many obstacles, have endeavoured to follow out the excellent instructions of Charles II., addressed to the Council of Foreign Plantations in 1670, which were as follows: "Forasmuch as most of our said colonies do border upon the Indians, and peace is not to be expected without the due observance and preservation of justice to them, you are, in our name, to command all the Governors that they at no time give any just provocation to any of the said Indians that are at peace with us, &c. That with respect to the Indians who desire to put themselves under our protection, that they 'be received;' 'and that the Governors do by all ways seek firmly to oblige them; and that they do employ some persons to learn the languages of them; and that they do not only carefully protect and defend them from adversaries, but that they more especially take care that none of our own subjects, nor any of their servants, do any way harm them. That if any shall dare to offer any violence to them in their persons, goods, or

possessions, the said Governors do severely punish the said injuries agreeably to justice and right. And you are to consider how the Indians and slaves may be best instructed and converted to the Christian religion; it being both for the honour of the Crown and of the Protestant religion itself, that all persons within any of our territories, though never so remote, should be taught the knowledge of God, and be acquainted with the mysteries of salvation.'

That such has been the conduct of the Company, was acknowledged by the Aborigines Parliamentary Committee and Sir T. Fowell Buxton, in 1837. Testimony to the same effect has been given by the late Mr. Thomas Simpson, who, in company with Mr. Dease, another of the Hudson's Bay Company's servants, under the liberal encouragement and provision of the Hudson's Bay Company, made a tour, as before stated, from Fort Chipewyan to the more northern parts of the continent, and in several parts of the *Narrative of the Discoveries on the North Coast of America*, published by Bentley in 1843, are passages bearing on the conduct of the Company. The following is in point:—'During this month I had the most convincing proofs of that recklessness which prompts the Indian to prefer a momentary gratification to a substantial benefit. Earnest applications were made by the assembled Chipewyans for the re-introduction into their country of ardent spirits, which had been for many years discontinued by the Company's humane policy. Their attachment to the poisonous beverage, however, remained so strong, that, every season, parties of the tribes traversed the continent to Churchill, on Hudson's Bay, with no other purpose but to obtain it. At length its use was prohibited there also, and the Chipewyans renewed their solicitations. Instead of gaining their point, they were now justly reprov'd by their benefactor, Mr. Smith, and obliged to confess their own folly.' The following is an extract of the Company's standing orders on these subjects:—'That the Indians be treated with kindness and indulgence, and mild and conciliatory means resorted to, in order to encourage industry, repress vice, and inculcate morality; that the use of spirituous liquors be gradually discontinued in the few districts in which it is



yet indispensable; and that the Indians be liberally supplied with requisite necessities, particularly with articles of ammunition, whether they have the means of paying for it or not.' It is equally the Company's inclination and their interest to render the natives comfortable. It is when they are well clothed, and amply provided with ammunition, that they are best able to exert themselves in collecting furs and provisions. But, so far is it from the Company's wish to acquire an undue influence over them, by loading them with debts, that repeated attempts have been made to reduce the trade to a simple barter. In order to effect an object so beneficial to the natives themselves, the arrears of the Chipewyans have been twice cancelled since the junction of the two companies in 1821; but the generous experiment has signally failed. The improvidence of the Indian character is an insurmountable obstacle to its success, and, in the Chipewyans, is aggravated by a custom which the whites have not yet been able wholly to eradicate. On the death of a relative, they destroy guns, blankets, kettles, everything, in short, they possess,—concluding the havoc by tearing their lodges to pieces. When these transports of grief have subsided, they must have recourse to the nearest establishment for a fresh supply of necessities; and thus their debts are renewed. The debts of the deceased are, in every case, lost to the Company. The Indian debt system is, in reality, equivalent to the practice, in many civilized countries, of making advances to hired servants previous to the commencement of their actual duties. This is particularly remarkable among the French Canadians, who can scarcely be induced to undertake any work or service without first receiving part payment in advance. Their improvidence approaches to that of the Indian, and produces similar effects.'—(Pp. 72—75.)

The treatment of the Indians on the west coast, is shown by the Rev. Samuel Parker, a Minister of the Gospel in the United States, who was sent by the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions to ascertain the field for missionary enterprise beyond the Rocky Mountains, in 1836-7. The reverend gentleman takes occasion in various places to express his highest commendation of the policy

and proceedings of the Hudson's Bay Company. At page 81 of his interesting Journal, he says: 'The gentlemen belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company deserve commendation for their gentle treatment of the Indians, by which they have obtained their friendship and confidence, and also for the efforts which some few of them have made to instruct those about them in the first principles of our holy religion, especially in regard to equity, humanity, and morality. This Company is of long standing; they have originated a vast trade, which they are anxious to preserve, and therefore they consult the prosperity of the Indians, as intimately connected with their own. I have not been informed, as yet, of a single instance of any Indian being wantonly killed by the men belonging to this Company; nor have I heard any boasting among them of the satisfaction taken in killing or abusing Indians, too frequently observable elsewhere.' Indeed it is so obviously the interest of a powerful body like the Hudson's Bay Company, who are not grasping at an immediate individual advantage, who feel they are responsible to their Sovereign and the Nation for the righteous fulfilment of the trust reposed in them, and who, it is to be presumed, have Christian consciences as well as other men, that it is scarcely necessary to multiply evidence on the subject; but, as it is now proposed to entrust to this Company the colonization of Vancouver's Island, it is desirable to examine their past proceedings in every respect.

Mr. Simpson, speaking of his wintering at Fort Chipewyan, in 1837, says:—'The month of February was unusually mild, and at noon the sun not unfrequently asserted his increasing power by a gentle thaw. Messengers were continually arriving with favourable accounts from the Indian camps; a pleasing contrast to the preceding winter, which is rendered memorable to the poor natives by the ravages of an influenza—scarcely less dreadful than the cholera—that carried off nearly 200 of the distant Chipewyans. I say *distant*, because all who were within reach of the establishment were sent for and carried thither, where every care was taken of them; warm clothing and lodgings were provided; medicines administered; the traders and servants fed them, parting with their own slender

stock of luxuries\* for their nourishment; till even the cold heart of the red man warmed into gratitude, and his lips uttered the unwonted accents of thanks.'—(Pp. 67, 68.) And again—'It is with sincere pleasure I take this occasion of observing, that the harsh treatment of their women, for which the Chipewyans were, not long since, remarkable, even among the North American tribes, is now greatly alleviated, especially among those who have frequent communication with the establishments. At Great Bear Lake I had many opportunities of witnessing the conduct of this particular family, and always saw the females treated with kindness. The present Chipewyan character, indeed, contrasts most favourably with that of the party who accompanied Hearne on his discovery of the Copper Mine River, and who massacred the unhappy Esquimaux, surprised asleep in their tents at the Bloody Fall. A large proportion of the Company's servants, and, with very few exceptions, the officers, are united to native women. A kindly feeling of relationship thus exists between them and the Indians, which tends much to the safety of the small and thinly scattered posts, placed, as they are, among overwhelming numbers, were those numbers hostile. The rising class of officers have begun to marry the young ladies educated at Red River, which will tend to give a higher tone to the manners and morals of the country, without, it is to be hoped, diminishing those mutual feelings of goodwill that now subsist between the Indians and the traders resident among them.

'An aged Cree hunter arrived with his family. Feeling his strength, which had borne him through forest and flood for many a year, no longer equal to the chase, the old man said that he was come to end his days at the fort. With care and attention, however, he soon began to revive; the whole family were furnished with everything necessary, had the same rations assigned them as the

\* 'A few pounds of tea, sugar, &c., allowed to officers and guides, and purchased by the common men, are called 'luxuries' in Hudson's Bay. The old Canadian 'voyageurs' who lament the degeneracy of their successors, are nothing loth to imitate their example in adding these comforts to their fare; and an encampment of the present day exhibits a regular assortment of tea kettles, pots, and pans.'

regular servants, and continued to live in comfort at the establishment. Many other Indians came in from the different camps with furs and for supplies.

‘From some of the Chipewyans I learned that they had, in the course of the preceding summer, met with a party of Esquimaux at the confluence of the noble Thelew or Thelon River with the Doo-baunt of Hearne, below the lake of the latter name, and not far from the influx of these united streams into Chesterfield Inlet. This meeting was of the most amicable character, and they spent a great part of the summer together. The Esquimaux even proposed to send two of their young men to Athabasca, inviting the same number of Indians to pass the winter with them. The arrangement was agreed to by both parties, but was frustrated by some petty jealousy among the women. They also informed me that, in 1832, some of the Athabasca Chipewyans accompanied the Churchill branch of their tribe on their annual meeting with other Esquimaux at Yath Kyed, or White Snow Lake of Hearne, which receives the united waters of the Cathawchaga and the rapid Kasan, or White Partridge River. This remarkable change, from mortal hatred to frank and confident intercourse, is solely owing to the humane interposition of the Company’s officers, who neglect no opportunity of inculcating on the minds of these savage tribes the propriety of their forgiving ancient wrongs, and uniting together in the bonds of peace and friendship. By the same influence, the warlike Beaver Indians of Peace River have been, of late years, reconciled to their old enemies, the Thœcanies of the Rocky Mountains, and the Carriers of New Caledonia.’—(*Narrative, &c.*, pp. 69—72.)

Wherever, indeed, the Hudson’s Bay Company have established settlements or forts (as their stockades are called), they have made a nucleus for civilization, which gradually spreads around.

Governor Simpson, in an able *résumé* of the proceedings of the Hudson’s Bay Company, dated 1st February, 1837, printed in the Parliamentary Papers of 8th August, 1842, p. 17, says:—‘I have no hesitation in saying, that the native population of the countries through which the Hudson’s Bay Company’s business extends never

derived any real benefit from their intercourse with the whites until the fur trade became exercised under the existing licence. In proof of this, the population of some of the tribes, previous to that time sensibly diminishing, is now increasing ; and from my experience of the times of opposition, I can further say, that if the trade were again thrown open to competition, all the horrors of the late contest would break out afresh ; drunkenness and demoralization would have their former sway, not only among the natives, but among the whites, whom we are now enabled to keep under proper subordination, which was never the case during the excitement occasioned by the rivalry in trade ; the fur-bearing animals would in the course of a very few years become nearly extinct ; and the inevitable consequences would be the desertion of the natives by the traders, the latter having no longer any inducement to remain among them ; that unfortunate population, thus left to their own resources, must inevitably perish from cold and hunger,—the use of the bow and arrow, and other rude implements, formerly affording them the means of feeding and clothing themselves, being now unknown, and our guns, ammunition, fishing-tackle, iron works, cloth, blankets, and other manufactures having become absolutely necessary to their very existence. [For confirmation, see p. 84.]

‘ Previous to 1821 the business of the Columbia department was very limited ; but it has since been very greatly extended at much expense, and, I am sorry to add, at a considerable sacrifice of life among the Company’s officers and servants, owing to the fierce, treacherous, and bloodthirsty character of its population, and the dangers of the navigation.

‘ The fur trade is the principal branch of business at present in the country situated between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean. On the banks of the Columbia River, however, where the soil and climate are favourable to cultivation, we are directing our attention to agriculture on a large scale, and there is every prospect that we shall soon be able to establish important branches of export trade from thence in the articles of wool, tallow, hides, tobacco, and grain of various kinds.

‘I have also the satisfaction to say, that the native population are beginning to profit by our example, as many, formerly dependent on hunting and fishing, now maintain themselves by the produce of the soil.’

The Rev. S. Parker gives a most pleasing picture of Fort Vancouver on the Columbia, and thus writes to his friends:—‘I am very agreeably situated in this place. Half of a new house is assigned me, well furnished, and all the attendance which I could wish, with access to a valuable library. I have ample opportunities of riding out for exercise, or to see the adjoining country; and, in addition to all these advantages, and what is still more valuable, I enjoy the society of gentlemen, enlightened, polished, and sociable. These comforts were not anticipated, and are, therefore, the more grateful.

‘There is a school connected with this establishment, for the benefit of the children of the traders and common labourers, some of whom are orphans, whose parents were attached to the Company; and also some Indian children, who are provided for by the generosity of the resident gentlemen. They are instructed in the common branches of an English education, such as reading, writing, arithmetic, grammar, and geography; and, together with these, in religion and morality. The exercises of the school are closed with singing a hymn; after which, they are taken by their teacher to a garden assigned them, in which they labour. Finding them deficient in sacred music, I undertook to instruct them in singing, in which they make good progress, and develop excellent voices. Among them is one Indian boy, who has the most flexible and melodious voice I ever heard.

‘It is worthy of notice, how little of the Indian complexion is seen in the half-breed children. Generally they have fair skin, often flaxen hair, and blue eyes. The children of the school were punctual in their attendance on the three services of the Sabbath, and formed our choir.’—(*Journey beyond the Rocky Mountains*, p. 39.)

In the ‘Narrative’ before referred to, Mr. T. Simpson thus records his impressions of the state of the Indians at the Red River Settlement:

'It may be remarked that, while not a few of the children, by native women, of the Company's retired European servants, who are chiefly Orkneymen, inherit the plodding careful disposition of their fathers, the half-breed descendants of the French Canadians are, with rare exceptions, characterized by the paternal levity and extravagance, super-added to the uncontrollable passions of the Indian blood. Many of the industrious Scotch, who first planted the Colony in 1811, under the auspices of the late Earl of Selkirk, have saved handsome sums of money, besides rearing large families in rustic plenty. A considerable portion of this valuable class, however, dreading the predominance and violence of the half-breeds, with whom they have avoided intermarrying, have converted their property into money, and removed to the United States.

'Besides extensive purchases of grain and provisions, for their transport and other service, the Company annually expends large sums at Red River, in works of public utility, such as experimental farming, erecting churches and other buildings, endowing schools, affording medical aid gratis to the poor, encouraging domestic manufactures, maintaining an armed police, dispensing justice, and in contributing to the support of two Protestant clergymen, of a Roman Catholic bishop, and three priests from Canada. These self-denying men are exemplary in their lives, zealous and indefatigable in their benevolent labours, among the fruits of which may be reckoned the conversion and location of a great number of Indians, of the Cree and Salteaux, or Chippeway nations. To compensate this heavy outlay, the Company has hitherto derived no return, for the occasional sale of lands does not even defray the cost of the survey, they being in most instances bestowed gratis, though regularly purchased from the Indians, and the fur trade of the surrounding country has been long ago ruined by the Colony; but under the Company's fostering care, a population of five thousand souls has been nurtured, and a comfortable retreat has been provided for such of its retired officers and servants as prefer spending the evening of life, with their native families, in this oasis of the desert, to returning to the countries of their nativity. I

cannot pass over, without particular notice, the admirable boarding-schools established by the Rev. Mr. Jones, where about sixty youth of both sexes, the intelligent and interesting offspring of the Company's officers, are trained up in European accomplishments, and in the strictest principles of religion. Nor should I omit mentioning the Indian Settlements, founded by the Rev. Mr. Cockran at the lower extremity of the Colony. He has provided schoolmasters for the native children, and built places of worship, where he regularly officiates. He has constructed a windmill for the Indians, assists them in erecting their wooden houses, and with his own hands sets them the example of industry. At the other extremity of the Colony, M. Belcour, one of the Roman Catholic priests, with untiring zeal, conducts a location of Salteaux Indians on a smaller scale. I wish I could add that the improvement of the aborigines is commensurate to those beneficent cares. But, unhappily, the experience of Canada, of the United States, of California, in short, of all parts of North America, where the experiment of ameliorating the character of the Indian tribes by civilization has been tried, is renewed at Red River. Nothing can overcome their insatiable desire for intoxicating liquors; and though they are here excluded from the use of spirits, and the settlers are fined when detected in supplying them with ale, yet, from the great extent of the Colony, they too often contrive to gratify that debasing inclination, to which they are ready to sacrifice everything they possess. They feel no gratitude to their benefactors, or spiritual teachers; and, while they lose the haughty independence of savage life, they acquire at once all the bad qualities of the white man, but are slow, indeed, of imitating his industry and his virtues\*.

'Indian lads, educated in the Church Missionary Society's School at Red River, have been sent to instruct their countrymen in various parts of the Company's territory. In the countries of the Columbia

\* 'Yet among the native tribes there exist marked distinctions. The Swampy Crees, who have long been employed in the Company's service at York Factory and other places, adopt steady habits with far greater facility than the proud Salteaux, who contemptuously term the settlers gardeners and diggers of the ground.'



and New Caledonia, to the westward of the great Rocky Mountain chain, the missionary labours promise considerable success. There the climate is softened by the influences of the Pacific; food is abundant; the numerous natives do not lead the same solitary wandering lives as the Eastern tribes, but dwell together in villages. They are endowed with a greater capacity and quickness of apprehension; are more pliant and tractable in temper; are fond of imitating the customs of white men; and now receive, with eagerness, the truths of Christianity, from those upon whom but a few years ago they perpetrated the most barbarous murders; but the fever and ague, to which the country is very subject, has of late thinned their numbers. The Company's principal chaplain resides at their depôt of Fort Vancouver, on the north side of the Columbia River, where agriculture, rearing of stock, and other commercial operations, are prosecuted on a great scale. The same enlightened body has, of late years, liberally assisted American missionaries employed in instructing the dissolute maritime tribes, and in founding an American colony on the Willamette, a southern tributary of the Columbia; and has since conveyed across the mountains several Canadian priests, who, under the authority of the Bishop at Red River, are gone to form another British settlement on the shores of Puget Sound, the nucleus of a future empire in the Far West. The case is widely different in the frozen regions of the North, there the Indian hunters are scattered through interminable forests, into which civilization can never penetrate. Since the coalition of the rival companies, however, and the discharge of the noxious swarm of adventurers, who, encouraged by the licence of a hot opposition, overran and well nigh ruined the country, the precepts of morality and order have been instilled into the minds of the aborigines by many officers of the Company. No stronger proof of the salutary effect of their injunctions can be adduced than that, while peace and decorum mark the general conduct of the Northern tribes, bloodshed, rapine, and unbridled lust are the characteristics of the fierce hordes of Assiniboines, Piegans, Blackfeet, Circees, Fall and Blood Indians, who inhabit the plains between the Saskatchewan and Missouri,

and are without the pale of the Company's influence and authority.

'It gives me sincere pleasure to say, that a reconciliation has at length been effected between those lately inveterate and bloody enemies, the *Saulteaux* and *Sioux* nations. Under the safeguard of the Company's people, aided by the settlers, two bands of the latter tribe visited Red River during my residence there, in 1834 and 1836. Presents were given and speeches were made, both to them and to the assembled *Saulteaux*, who upon the first occasion were very violent, and were only restrained from bloodshed by disarming and other vigorous measures; but, upon the last occasion, they smoked the calumet of peace, and slept in the same apartments with the *Sioux* at the Company's head quarters, Fort Garry. The *Sioux* seemed highly gratified with the kindness and protection they experienced, and have on several occasions performed friendly offices to the Company's couriers and others passing through their country to the American garrison on the river St. Peter's. They are a war-like equestrian race, with light sinewy frames, and eagle eyes, who pursue the buffalo in the boundless plains of the Missouri and the Upper Mississippi.'—(*Narrative, &c.*, pp. 14—20.)

During the years 1838 to 1842, the United States employed a scientific surveying expedition of three vessels of war, on the western coast of America and in the Pacific Ocean, under the command of an able officer, Commodore Wilkes. The information thus obtained has been published in five large volumes, with an atlas\*, and may be deemed official. Commodore Wilkes, like all Americans, under the influence of so-called popular principles, was unwilling to find errors anywhere among his fellow countrymen; but, with the frankness characteristic of his profession, he has not suppressed the views he entertains in consequence of what he actually saw of the proceedings and conduct of the Hudson's Bay Company. In several places throughout his interesting work, the Commodore bears high testimony to the character of the officers of the Company—to their humane treatment of the Indians—to their

\* Published by Wiley and Putnam. London, 1845.

admirable arrangement and economy in conducting the fur trade—to the respect which they inspire for the British name, and to the advantageous colonizing stations which they formed in the Oregon territory.

In passing through this region the Commodore remarks:—‘The Indians of this region even now make war upon each other on the most trivial occasion, and for the most part to satisfy individual revenge. *The Hudson's Bay Company's officers possess and exert a most salutary influence, endeavouring to preserve peace at all hazards. It is now quite safe for a white man to pass in any direction through the part of the country where their posts are; and in case of accident to any white settler, a war-party is at once organized, and the offender is hunted up.* About a year previous to our arrival, an Indian was executed at Astoria for the murder of a white man, whom he had found asleep, killed, and stolen his property.

‘He was taken, tried, found guilty, and executed in the presence of most of the settlers. The culprit was a slave, and it was some time before the chief to whom he belonged would give him up. It was proved on the trial, and through the confession of the slave, that he had stolen the property and committed the murder by order of his master, who took all the stolen goods. The master made his escape when he found his agency had been discovered; and I understood that he kept himself aloof from all the Company's posts, until the matter should be forgotten.’—(Vol. iv., p. 323.)

The Rev. G. Barnley, one of the Wesleyan Ministers in the Hudson's Bay Company's territories, in a letter to the Wesleyan Committee, dated Moose Factory, Rupert's Land, 24th August, 1848, thus speaks of the treatment of the Indians by the Company:—‘The Company appears to regard, as far and perhaps further than could be expected, the welfare of the Indians, who are completely dependent on them. The introduction of firearms has caused the natives to lose that skill with the bow and arrow which characterises the Indian of the plains, so that, without constant supplies of ammunition, they would be unable to procure sufficient food to

sustain life. In former times, when traders opposed to each other were competing for their furs, the Indians were more independent; but as they were passionately fond of rum, of course they wished to procure it in exchange; and if one party of traders had refused to supply them with it, all the trade would at once have been thrown into the hands of the other: and the Indians would not have been benefited, but greatly injured. It is gratifying to know, that in no case through the territory is liquor sold to them; it is more so, to find that the system of giving it is being gradually discontinued, and that dry goods are furnished instead of the fire-water.'—(*Wesleyan Missionary Notices*, February 1841, p. 448.)

In the Rev. J. Smithurst's Report to the Church Missionary Society, for 1846, on the Indians in North-West America, he says: 'I by no means think that hunting has a demoralizing effect upon the Indians, if they are not supplied with rum to take out with them. I would much rather that they should be away hunting, than employed among the European and half-bred settlers, where they would be exposed to the temptations of beer, rum, &c.'

The kind treatment of the Indians by the Hudson's Bay Company, as stated by Commodore Wilkes and Mr. Greenhow, is confirmed by the Bishop of Montreal, who says, in his Journal:— 'Acts of violence committed upon the persons of the factors or traders of the Company must, I apprehend, be of exceedingly rare occurrence. As far as I had opportunities of knowing, the general system pursued at the Forts, with reference to the treatment of the people employed, is such as to gain their attachment. And the Indian hangers-on, in seasons of want, draw largely upon the charity of these establishments. Kindness, united with firmness and decision, appears to be the secret of governing mankind throughout the world, ill as it is understood in too large a portion of it.'—(Pp. 123, 124.)

The reader will now be prepared to estimate at its true value the assertion that 'the present appalling condition of the native population, their ignorance, their barbarism, and the sufferings and crimes consequent thereon, are ascribable to the present system of

misgovernment; that 'the lives of the unoffending native race, are being virtually sacrificed year by year to the selfish and iniquitous object of drawing the greatest possible revenue from the country; and that by the proceedings of the Company the natives are 'exposed yearly to all the horrors of famine, and the attendant crimes of murder and cannibalism\*.' In no other part of the continent of North America have the Indians been conserved so well as in the Hudson's Bay Company's territories; indeed, they have been almost extirpated in Canada, and in the United States; and it is probable that in a few years they will be utterly destroyed or expelled from the regions south of the 49° parallel of latitude.

The general and minute testimony given by the Bishop of Montreal, the British Ministers of the Gospel, by the Rev. S. Parker, Commodore Wilkes, and Mr. Greenhow, three American gentlemen, whose favourable evidence cannot be invalidated, is ample proof of the treatment of the Indians by the Hudson's Bay Company. The schools, and the attention given to religious instruction, are but the commencement of a system which requires years of the most judicious management to establish and extend. Any person who has seen savages in America, Africa, Asia, or Australia, know how difficult, nay almost impossible, it is to impart to them even the first rudiments of civilization,—to induce them to derive their subsistence from the cultivation of the soil,—to eradicate the fearful vices, crimes, and false principles of unreclaimed man. The Australian savage perishes by European contact, like snow beneath the summer sun: even the care and principles of William Penn failed for the preservation of the Indians; and Sir George Simpson, the Governor of the Hudson's Bay Company's territories in America, feelingly deplores the hopelessness of civilizing the Indian population.

\* Memorial to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, in the pamphlet of Mr. A. K. Isbester.

## Part IV.

---

### CHRISTIAN CONDUCT AND BENEFICENT POLICY OF THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY.

---

It is difficult to enter into details on this branch of the subject; conclusions must be drawn from general facts, and allowances made for the nature of the country, its position, climate, products, the character of the inhabitants, and the means required for their improvement.

After a careful examination of all circumstances, there can be no hesitation in saying, that the Hudson's Bay Company have well fulfilled the objects for which their Charter was granted in 1670. Without any aid from the Crown—without any drain upon the national exchequer,—opposed by American and even English rivalry,—subject to plunder and devastation by the fleets and forces of the French and Russian Governments,—struggling against an inclement climate, in a sterile soil,—shut out from maritime communication with England, except for a few months in the year,—and amidst hosts of wild, warlike, treacherous, and mere hunting savages, the Hudson's Bay Company have acquired and maintained for England, by a sagacious and prudent policy, by honourable, and, above all, by Christian conduct, that portion of the North American continent which lies between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, north of the 49th degree of latitude, extending over more than *three* million square miles—(3,060,000.)

But for the Hudson's Bay Company England, would probably have been shut out from the Pacific, for, on the 5th of April, 1814, a convention was signed between the United States and Russia, (to which England was no party,) making the 54th paral-

lel the boundary of their respective dominions. The settlements of the Hudson's Bay Company on the Columbia River and in the Oregon region defeated this project.

The American geographer and librarian to the United States' Government, Mr. Greenhow, who ably vindicates the rights and claims of his own country, who is by no means favourably disposed to any claims of England on the continent of America, and who, as an American, is little inclined to approve of the conduct of an Association whose interests he naturally considers opposed to those of his own countrymen, thus candidly expresses his views in 1844, when referring to the disputed territory of the Oregon, Columbia River, Vancouver's Island, &c. :—

' The British Ministers could have no counsellors better qualified to advise, or whose interests were more completely identified with those of the Government, than the Hudson's Bay Company, who, representing in all respects the interests of Great Britain in North-West America, has indeed become a powerful body. The field of its operations was more than doubled by its union with the North-West Company, and by the licence to trade, in exclusion of all other British subjects, in the countries west of the Rocky Mountains, where the fur-bearing animals are more abundant than in any other part of the world; while the extension of the jurisdiction of the Canada courts over the whole division of the continent, to which its charters apply, and the appointment of its own agents as magistrates in those regions, gave all that could have been desired for the enforcement of its regulations. The arrangement made with the Russian-American Company, through the intervention of the two Governments, secured to the Hudson's Bay Company the most advantageous limits in the north-west; and the position assumed by Great Britain, in the discussions with the United States respecting Oregon, were calculated to increase the confidence of the body in the strength of its tenure of that country, and to encourage greater efforts on its part to assure that tenure.

' The licence granted to the Hudson's Bay Company in 1821,

expired in 1842, but another had been previously conceded, also for twenty-one years, containing some new and important provisions. Thus, the Company was bound, under heavy penalties, to enforce the due execution of all criminal processes by the officers and other persons, legally empowered in all its territories; and to make and submit to the Government such rules and regulations for the management of the trade with the Indians as should be effectual to prevent the sale and distribution of spirituous liquors among them, and to promote their moral and religious improvement. It is, moreover, declared in the grant, that nothing therein contained should authorise the Company to claim the right of trade in any part of America, to the prejudice or exclusion of the people of '*any foreign states*,' who may be entitled to trade there, in virtue of conventions between such states and Great Britain; and the Government reserves to itself the right to establish within the territories included in the grant any colony or province, to annex any part of those territories to any existing colony or province, and to apply to such portion any form of civil government which might be deemed proper. Whether this last provision was introduced with some special and immediate object, or with a view to future contingencies, no means have as yet been afforded for determining. It is, however, certain that the British Government insisted strongly on retaining the above-mentioned privileges; and it is most probable, the Red River\* and the Columbia countries were in view at the time, as the remainder of the territory, included in the grant and not possessed by the Company in virtue of the Charter of 1669, is of little value in any way. In addition to the assistance and protection thus received from the British Government, the constitution of the Hudson's Bay Company is such as to secure the utmost degree of knowledge and prudence in its councils, and of readiness and exactness in the execution of its orders. Its affairs are superintended by a Governor, a Deputy Governor, and a Committee of Directors established at London, by whom

\* Mr. Greenhow is wrong so far as the Red River territory is concerned, as that region is not included in the exclusive Licence of trade in 1838.—[R. M. M.]



all general orders and regulations are devised and issued, and all reports and accounts are examined and controlled. The proceedings of this body are enveloped in profound secrecy, and the communications made to the Government in writing, which are likely to be published, are expressed in terms of studied caution, and afford only the details absolutely required.

‘ The trade in America is especially directed by a resident Governor, who occasionally visits and inspects all the principal posts ;—under him, as officers, are chief factors, chief traders, and clerks, for the most part natives of North Britain, and an army of regular servants, employed as hunters, traders, voyageurs, &c., nearly all of them Canadians, or half-breeds. The number of all these persons is small, when compared with the duties they have to perform ; but the manner in which they are admitted into the service, and the training to which they are subjected, are such as to render their efficiency and their devotion to the general interests as great as possible. The strictest discipline, regularity, and economy, are enforced in every part of the Company’s territories ; and the magistrates appointed under the Act of Parliament for the preservation of tranquillity, are seldom called to exercise their functions, except in the settlement of trifling disputes.

‘ In the treatment of the aborigines of the countries under its control, the Hudson’s Bay Company appear to have admirably reconciled policy with humanity. The prohibition to supply those people with ardent spirits, appears to be rigidly enforced. Schools for the instruction of the native children are established at all the principal trading posts, each of which also contains a hospital for sick Indians, and offers employment for those who are disposed to work, whilst hunting cannot be carried on. Missionaries of various sects are encouraged to endeavour to convert them to Christianity, and to induce them to adopt the usages of civilized life, so far as may be consistent with the nature of the labours required for their support ; and attempts are made, at great expense, to collect the Indians in villages, on tracts where the climate and soil are most favourable for agriculture.

Particular care is extended to the education of the half-breed children, the offspring of the marriage or concubinage of the traders with the Indian women, who are retained and bred as far as possible among the white people, and are employed, whenever they are found capable, in the service of the Company. As there are few or no white women in those territories, except in the Red River settlements, it may be readily seen that the half-breeds must in a short time form a large and important portion of the native population.

‘ The conduct of the Hudson’s Bay Company in these respects is certainly worthy of commendation. It is, however, to be observed, that of the whole territory placed under the authority of that body, only a few small portions are capable of being rendered productive by agriculture. From the remainder nothing of value can be obtained, excepting furs, and those articles can be procured in greater quantities, and at less cost, by the labour of the Indians, than by any other means. There is consequently no object in expelling or destroying the native population, which can never be dangerous from its numbers, while, on the contrary, there is a direct and evident motive and interest for preserving and conciliating them, and the British certainly employ the best methods to attain those ends. By the system above described, the natural shyness and distrust of the savages have been in a great measure removed; the ties which bound together the members of the various tribes have been loosened, and extensive combinations for any purpose have become impossible.

‘ The dependence of the Indians upon the Company is, at the same time, rendered entire and absolute; for, having abandoned the use of all their former arms, hunting and fishing implements, and clothes, they can no longer subsist without the guns, ammunition, fish-hooks, blankets, and other similar articles which they receive only from the British traders. The position of the Hudson’s Bay Company towards the North American Indians is thus wholly different from that held by the East India Company with respect to the Chinese; the motives for prohibiting the introduc-

tion of spirits among the former people being as strong on the one part, as those for favouring the consumption of opium among the latter people are on the other. The course observed by the Hudson's Bay Company towards American citizens in the territory west of the Rocky Mountains, has been equally unexceptionable and yet equally politic. All the missionaries and emigrants from the United States, and, indeed, all strangers from whatever countries they might come, were received at the establishments of the Company on the Columbia with the utmost kindness and hospitality, and they were aided in the prosecution of their objects, so far and so long as those objects were not commercial. But no sooner did any one, unconnected with the Company, attempt to hunt, or to trap, or to trade with the natives, than all the force of the body was immediately directed towards him. There is no evidence, or well-founded suspicion, that the Hudson's Bay agents have ever resorted, directly or indirectly, to violence, in order to defeat the efforts of such rivals. And, indeed, those means would have been superfluous, whilst the Company enjoys such great advantages in its organization, its wealth, and the minute knowledge of the country, and influence over the natives, possessed by its agents. Wherever an American trading post has been established, or an American party has been engaged in trade on the Columbia, there appeared a Hudson's Bay agent at the head of a number of hunters, or with a large stock of merchandise, or a large amount of specie in hand, which were offered for skins on terms much more favourable to the Indians than those possessed by the citizens of the United States; and the latter, in consequence, finding their labours vain, were soon obliged to retire from the field. Even without employing such extraordinary and expensive means, the British traders, receiving their goods in the Columbia by sea from London, free from duty, can always undersell the Americans, who must transport their merchandise two thousand miles over land, from the frontiers of the United States, where the articles best adapted for the trade have previously been subjected to an import duty. In pursuance

of the same system, the Company endeavours, and generally with success, to prevent the vessels of the United States from obtaining cargoes on the north-west coasts of America, though the mariners of all nations, when thrown upon the coasts by shipwreck, or by other misfortunes, have uniformly received shelter and protection at its posts and factories. The furs and skins, which have hitherto formed almost the whole returns from the territories of the Hudson's Bay Company, are collected from the different posts, in part by regularly employed hunters and trappers, but chiefly by trade with the Indians of the surrounding country; and they are nearly all shipped for London in the Company's vessels at Montreal, or York, or Moose Factories on Hudson's Bay, or Fort Vancouver on the Columbia; the goods for trade, and the supply of the posts being received the same way.'—(Pp. 393—397, *History of Oregon and California*, published by Murray, London. 1844.)

The grounds on which the exclusive licence of trade was granted in 1838, are stated by the Board of Trade (letter, 2nd June, 1837) to be on account of the *liberal and enlightened policy* which has generally distinguished the Hudson's Bay Company; and the 'peculiar nature of the fur trade seems to justify, and even to recommend, the adoption of the principle of conferring exclusive privileges upon a great body engaged in it, however objectionable such a principle appears with reference to commercial affairs generally.'—(Letter from Mr. (now Sir) Denis Le Marchant, Bart., to the Colonial Secretary, *Parliamentary Papers*, 547, of 8th of August, 1842.)

The present Governor-General of Canada, Lord Elgin, one of the most upright and able servants of the Crown, and whose judgment is of the highest order, thus expresses himself in a reply to the inquiries of the Secretary of State for the Colonies:—'*I am bound to state that the result of the inquiries I have made is highly favourable to the Company, and has left on my mind the impression that the authority which they exercise over the vast and inhospitable region subject to their jurisdiction is, on the whole, very advantageous to the Indians.*'

The Bishop of Montreal, on his visit to the Red River settlement in 1844, says, that the arrangements for his doing so were all made for him 'in the most excellent manner, and with the most careful attention, by direction of Sir G. Simpson, the Governor of the Hudson's Bay territories.' The Bishop speaks of '*the kindness and attention which he everywhere experienced at the hands of the Hudson's Bay Company's servants.*' At page 166 of his Journal, says, 'It is the rule of the Company's posts that the factor or trader in charge, where there is no clergyman, should read the church service on Sundays to the persons who can be gathered to hear it:—the Company have forwarded the erection of churches at Red River.' And at page 164 his Lordship remarks—'If I may judge from the kindness shown personally to myself, the facilities given to my operations, and the respect paid to my office by *all* the gentlemen representing the Company's interest with whom I had to do, that body must be presumed well affected to the cause; and that its several proceedings are conducted on a liberal scale, I have some occasion to notice.'—(P. 164.) The worthy Bishop wishes to have a Bishop appointed for Rupert's Land, as he considers that '*all the virtue of the Gospel is centered in the Episcopate.*'—(Journal, p. 169.) The Hudson's Bay Company are, however, adopting the more prudent course of assisting the education of the people on religious principles. The late Mr. Leith, who was a resident factor of the Company, has bequeathed £.10,000 toward the propagation of the Gospel in the scene of his former pursuits and occupations.

A branch of the 'Church Missionary Society' was established at Red River settlement in 1822, under the Rev. Mr. West, who was appointed Chaplain to the Company. In 1824, the Rev. Mr. Jones was appointed Chaplain to the Company, and the Bishop of Montreal says, '*he met with much countenance and support from the authorities of the Hudson's Bay Company,*' who, in 1834, '*gave a munificent grant*' towards the construction of another Protestant Church.—(Journal, pp. 194, 218.) 'The building was opened for Divine Service on the 26th of Novem-

ber, 1834. It is capable of accommodating, comfortably, 700 people, and 1000 might find room without being over-crowded.

‘ Five day-schools, containing about 400 children, had been established ; besides two seminaries, affording board, lodging, and education, to twenty-five young ladies, and thirty young gentlemen, children of the gentlemen engaged in the service of the Hudson’s Bay Company. These were under the care and superintendence of Mr. and Mrs. Jones, assisted by a tutor and governess from England. At the different Sunday-schools, also, nearly 300 received religious instruction, Moreover, the orderly demeanour, moral conduct, and religious habits of all classes, were, for the most part satisfactory and cheering.’—(Pp. 218.)

‘ In 1839,’ says the Bishop, ‘ the Committee had the satisfaction to find that the Hudson’s Bay Company more disposed to countenance and promote the formation of a Missionary station at Cumberland House, one of their posts, about 500 miles from the Red River.’ The following shows the present state of the Church of England Mission in Rupert’s Land. In North America, as also in our other Colonial possessions, this invaluable auxiliary of the Parent Church of England has been of eminent service to Christianity.

		1846-7	and	1847-8.
Church Missionary Stations .....		6		5
Communicants.....		530		535
Attendants on Public Worship.....		1800		1800
Schools.....		9		17
Scholars	{ Boys.....	156	594	718
	{ Girls.....	166		
	{ Sexes not mentioned	198		
	{ Youths and adults ...	79		

Commodore Wilkes, speaking of Fort Vancouver on the Columbia River, says, ‘ There are extensive kitchens and apartments for the half-breed and Indian children that the Company have taken to bring up and educate. Of these there are now

twenty-three boys and fifteen girls, who claim the particular attention of Dr. M'Laughlin and Mrs. Douglas. A teacher is employed for the boys, who superintends them not only in school, but in the field and garden. During my stay, an examination took place, and although the pupils did not prove very expert at their reading and writing, yet we had sufficient evidence that they had made some improvement, and were in a fair way to acquire the rudiments. Some allowance was to be made for the boys, who had been constantly in the field under their teacher for a few months past. Dr. M'Laughlin estimated the labour of four of these small boys as equal to that of a man. It was an interesting sight to see these poor little cast-away fellows, of all shades of colour, from the pure Indian to that of the white, thus snatched away from the vices and idleness of the savage. They all speak both English and French; they are also instructed in religious exercises, in which I thought they appeared more proficient than in their other studies. These they are instructed in on Sunday, on which day they attend Divine worship twice. They were a ruddy set of boys, and when at work had a busy appearance; they had planted and raised six hundred bushels of potatoes, and, from what Dr. M'Laughlin said to me, fully maintain themselves. The girls are equally well cared for, and taught by a female, with whom they live and work.'—(Vol. iv., p. 330.)

In another passage the Commodore says, 'I was introduced to several of the Missionaries; Mr. and Mrs. Smith, of the American Board of Missions; Mr. and Mrs. Griffith, and Mr. and Mrs. Clarke, of the Self-Supporting Mission; Mr. Waller of the Methodist, and two others. They, for the most part, make Vancouver their home, where they are kindly received and well entertained at no expense to themselves. The liberality and freedom from sectarian principles of Dr. M'Laughlin, may be estimated from his being thus hospitable to Missionaries of so many Protestant denominations, although he is a professed Catholic, and has a priest of the same faith officiating daily at the chapel. Religious toleration is allowed in its fullest extent.

The dining hall is given up on Sunday to the use of the ritual of the Anglican church, and Mr. Douglass or a missionary reads the service.

‘ An opinion has gone abroad, I do not know how, that at this post there is a total disregard of morality and religion, and that vice predominates. As far as my observations went, I feel myself obliged to state, that *everything seems to prove the contrary, and to bear testimony that the officers of the Company are exerting themselves to check vice, and encourage morality and religion, in a very marked manner ; and that I saw no instance in which vice was tolerated in any degree. I have, indeed, reason to believe, from the discipline and the example of the superiors, that the whole establishment is a pattern of good order and correct deportment.*

‘ This remark not only extends to this establishment, but as far as our opportunities went (and all but two of the posts were visited), *the same good order prevails throughout the country. Wherever the operations of the Company extend, they have opened the way to future emigration, provided the means necessary for the success of emigrants, and rendered its peaceful occupation an easy and cheap task.*’—(Vol. iv., pp. 331, 332.)

These statements are a complete answer to the allegation, that the Company are ‘opposed to the spread of information among the native population,’ that the ‘considerations of humanity and religion are overlooked,’ and that ‘they trample down Christianity and benevolence’\*.

These allegations are unsustained by the slightest evidence, whereas their refutation is from unbiassed and high testimony ; by a Bishop of the Church of England, by three American gentlemen, a Minister of the Gospel, a Commodore of the American navy, and an official of the United States Government, and their testimony might be sustained by officers in the British army and navy, who have visited and examined recently some of the Hudson’s Bay Company’s settlements.

\* Memorial to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, by A. K. Isbester. 1848.



But as the subject is of the highest importance, and a neglect of religious duties and moral observances would justly subject any association to the condemnation of the people of England, and require Her Majesty's Government to deny an extension of authority to those who violate the laws of God which have been revealed to man for his temporal as well as for his spiritual good—I have been induced to inquire what has been done by the Hudson's Bay Company in support of that excellent institution, the 'Wesleyan Methodist Missionary Society,' whose efforts for the conversion of the heathen, in various parts of the globe, are deserving of cordial encouragement. Dr. Alder, one of the general Secretaries of the Society, has kindly furnished me with all the Missionary Reports on the subject. He was in North America last year, and informs me that the Mission has received the valuable aid of the Hudson's Bay Company at home, and of Sir G. Simpson and their chief factors and traders abroad. The Missionaries are supplied with provisions by the Company; they are conveyed, free of charge, from station to station by the Company; at Ross Ville, near Norway House, the principal station of the Mission, the Company have built for the Wesleyans a church, school-house, &c. In 1839, the Hudson's Bay Company 'invited and encouraged the Wesleyan Society to extend their Missions to the territories of the Company, and to certain districts of country beyond the limits of those territories, with a view to the moral and religious instruction of the numerous tribes of the aborigines, and to their civilization, and the general amelioration of their condition. To an application, alike honourable to the Christian benevolence of the Company and to the character of the Wesleyan Society, the committee promptly attended; and five Missionaries and one Indian Assistant Missionary are now actually employed in this sacred service. From the following brief description of the stations which these evangelical labourers severally occupy, some idea may be formed of the extent of the country, the character of the population, and the arduous nature of those duties which our

beloved brethren connected with this new and interesting Mission are called upon to perform.

‘1. Moose Factory is about 700 miles from the city of Montreal, in Lower Canada, and is the Company’s principal dépôt on the southern shores of Hudson’s Bay. Connected with this establishment, there are numerous stations to which the Missionary will have to pay periodical visits; some of which are at a distance from the Fort, varying from one hundred to two hundred and fifty miles. The Indians, in this district of country, are principally of the Swampy Cree tribe, with a few Esquimaux at an establishment called Big River, which is about two hundred and fifty miles to the north-east of Rupert’s River.

‘2. Michipicoten is the principal Factory belonging to the Company on the shores of Lake Superior; within and around which, and the different establishments in that extensive range of country, there is a considerable population of Europeans and half castes, as well as of native Indians, who are chiefly of the Ojibeway or Salteaux Indians.

‘3. Lac la Pluie is a trading post of the Company, situated near the height of land which divides the waters falling into the St. Lawrence from those that fall into Hudson’s Bay, and is distant from Montreal about one thousand three hundred miles. The neighbourhood of this place is a great rendezvous for Indians from the surrounding country, during the summer, as the means of living on fish and rice are very abundant, so that, including the inmates of the establishment, the Missionary will be in communication at that place, during an important period of the year, with, at least, one thousand adults; in addition to which he will, at stated seasons, visit other dépôts belonging to the Company, for the purpose of instructing the mixed population residing at the stations.

‘4. Fort Alexander is formed at the outlet of the River Winipeg, and is distant from Montreal one thousand five hundred miles. It is much frequented by the Indians, who, as well as those that visit Lac la Pluie, belong to the Ojibeway or Salteaux tribes.

‘5. Edmonton is an establishment on the Sackatchewan River, which has its source on the Rocky Mountains, and disembogues itself by Nelson River into Hudson’s Bay. It is distant from Montreal two thousand eight hundred miles. The Missionary will extend his labours from thence to the Athabasca River, which also has its origin on the Rocky Mountains. The establishments in that remote district are frequented by the bold and daring prairie or plain tribes of Indians, including the Assiniboines, the Peiagans, the Sarcees, and the Blood Indians. The Thickwood Crees and Assiniboines amount, with the whites and mixed population attached to the station, to between fifteen and twenty thousand souls.

‘6. Norway House, one of the principal dépôts belonging to the Company, is situated at the northern end of Lake Winipeg, and is distant from Montreal two thousand miles. There is an Indian village connected with this place, the inhabitants of which derive great advantages from the proximity of the Company’s establishment, where the Indians, who are a part of the Swampy Cree tribe, find permanent employment as fishermen, boatmen, and labourers. As Norway House is a central point, it is intended that it shall be the residence of the General Superintendent of these Missions, who will be able from thence to communicate with, and to visit, the other stations with greater facility than from any other part of the territory.

‘Such is the wide field of Missionary labour which has been providentially opened to our Society, and to which the following communications relate. It will be seen that *the Missionaries have experienced a most cordial reception from the officers in charge at the different establishments which they have visited* ; a circumstance which is, under God, chiefly to be ascribed to the kind and powerful recommendations in their behalf which have been forwarded by Governor Simpson, to whom the Society is placed under deep obligations. As that gentleman expects shortly to return to the territories, the Committee anticipate much advantage to the Missions from his presence and co-operation with the Missionaries

in their endeavours to promote a work in which he has manifested so deep an interest.

‘ We are indebted to the kindness and courtesy of Governor Simpson, and of the Governor and Committee of the Honourable Company, for permission to publish the following extracts from official communications received at the Hudson’s Bay House; from which it will be seen that the arrival of the Missionaries has diffused general satisfaction throughout the Company’s territories.

Extract of a Dispatch from Chief Factor Duncan Finlayson, to the Governor and Committee of the Honourable the Hudson’s Bay Company, dated Norway House, June 24th, 1840.

‘ We are exceedingly glad to find that an arrangement, promising so many blessings to the native population, has been effected with the Wesleyan Missionary Society. This is another instance, among many, of your Honours’ bounty and liberality towards increasing the means of diffusing Christian knowledge among the natives of this country, and we trust your repeated endeavours for their temporal and spiritual improvement will be appreciated by them, and attended with all the advantages which you so earnestly desire. The field for Missionaries in this country is wide; and if they perform their duties with patience and piety, as faithful ministers of the Gospel, they will have the satisfaction of seeing their labours crowned with success. They shall have our protection, and every personal kindness and attention in our power; in short, we shall attend to their wants, and afford them every facility and assistance to extend their sphere of usefulness, and to promote the great work they have taken in hand.’

Extract of a letter from Chief Factor Joseph Beioley, to Governor Simpson, dated Moose Factory, June 27th, 1840.

‘ The Rev. Mr. Barnley, Wesleyan Missionary, arrived here *viâ* Abitibbi, on the 3rd instant; and as comfortable accommo-

dation as possible in the Factory has been afforded to him, with a seat at the mess table, &c. Divine service has been performed regularly, and well attended, twice a day upon Sundays since his arrival. A school has been established, which is attended five days a week for a short time in the forenoon, by sundry of the young people of both sexes; and the Indians, male and female, receive, through the medium of interpreters, instructions on discourses from the reverend gentleman five days a week for a short time in the afternoon of each day. An hour in the evening of Sunday, namely, from six to seven o'clock, is also devoted to the instruction of the Indians; and in every instance there exists the utmost willingness to hear and understand, on the part of all the population of the island, whether residents or casual visitors, and whether Europeans and their descendants, or the pure native Indians.'

'The erection of a chapel shall be commenced as soon as practicable with the limited means at my command; but the erection of certain other buildings, which were contemplated last season, and for which I had got collected, logs, &c. during the winter and spring, must now be deferred. I presume that a building capable of accommodating about a hundred persons with sitting room, will be sufficiently large in the present state of this part of the world.'

Extract from the Minutes of a Council, held at Norway House, Northern Department, Rupert's Land, commencing June 18th, and ending June 24th, 1840.

'In order to give full effect to the laudable and benevolent views of the Governor and Committee, towards the diffusion of Christianity and civilization among the natives of this country, it is—

'Resolved 73,

'That three missions be established in the northern department this season, say, one at Norway House, under the charge of the Rev. Mr. Evans; one at Lac la Pluie, under the charge

of the Rev. Mr. Mason; and one at Edmonton, under the charge of the Rev. Mr. Rundle; that every facility be afforded them for successfully conducting their spiritual labours; and that a copy of the 9th paragraph of the Governor and Committee's dispatch of March 4th, 1840, on this subject, be forwarded to each of the gentlemen in charge of the above districts, for the purpose of giving full effect to their Honours' instructions.'—(*Notices for February 1841*, p. 437—440).

The following is an extract from the Report of the Wesleyan Methodist Missionary Society for 1840. — (Pp. 110—112.)

' A new and extensive field of labour and usefulness has, during the past year, been opened to this Society in that part of the north-western section of America, which constitutes the territory of the Honourable the Hudson's Bay Company. In addition to the European and half-caste population residing at the numerous forts and stations belonging to the Company in those immense regions, there is, in the southern department of the territory, an Indian population amounting to upwards of ten thousand souls. In the northern department, extending in a northerly and southerly direction from the height of land which divides the waters that flow into Lake Superior and the St. Lawrence, from those that fall into the tributaries of the Mississippi Missouri, to the high land that divides the waters which fall into the Polar Sea, from those that flow into Hudson's Bay—and in a westerly direction from Hudson's Bay to the Rocky Mountains,—there is an Indian population of one hundred thousand souls. To these long-neglected children of the Far North and West, our way is now open in consequence of arrangements into which the Committee have entered with the Governor and Committee of the Hudson's Bay Company; and thirty missionaries might at once be employed amongst them in guiding their feet into the way of peace.

' Five stations will be immediately occupied at Michipicoton,

Moose Fort, Norway House, Lac la Pluie, and Rocky Mountain House; and should it please the God of all Grace to smile upon this new undertaking, the day cannot be far distant when the Gospel will be preached by the Missionaries of this Society across the entire continent of North America, from the shores of Newfoundland and Nova Scotia, to those of the Pacific Ocean. The Committee have been encouraged to embark in this holy enterprise, even in the present embarrassed state of their funds, *in consequence of the liberal offers of assistance which were made to them by the Hudson's Bay Company.* Such is the desire felt by that distinguished body, for the propagation of Scriptural truth amongst their agents and servants, as well as the Indian tribes within their territories, that, while they have discouraged the attempts which have been recently made by the agents of the Papacy to extend their operations, they have agreed to provide for the Missionaries which *this Committee have sent, or may hereafter appoint, whether married or single, board and lodging, interpreters, servants, and the means of conveyance from place to place, free of all expense to the Society.* In addition to this, the Governor and Committee have spontaneously contributed one hundred pounds towards the amount of passage-money paid for the three Missionaries, (the Rev. Messrs. Barnley, W. Mason, and Rundle,) who sailed from Liverpool for New York, in March last, on their way to the Company's territories, where they are to be joined by an experienced and successful labourer in the work of Indian evangelization, the Rev. James Evans. The Committee gladly avail themselves of this opportunity of expressing their deep sense of obligation to the Governor and Committee of the Honourable Company in general, and especially to George Simpson, Esq., Governor-in-Chief of their territories, and to Captain Drew, R. N., for the lively interest which they have taken in all the arrangements connected with this undertaking, and for the valuable assistance which they have rendered to the Society.' In January 1841, the Wesleyan Society report that 'the Missionaries, on their arrival, were received with great

cordiality and kindness by the officers in charge at the different establishments to which they have been appointed.'

All the subsequent Reports of the Wesleyan Society express a grateful sense of the efforts of the Hudson's Bay Company to promote their Christian object.

The Rev. P. Jacobs, in a communication from Lac la Pluie, to the Wesleyan Society, of 25th August, 1840, says, '*the gentlemen of the Honourable Hudson's Bay Company are very kind and good to us. I have prayers with these good people every evening.*'

The Rev. James Evans, in a letter, dated Norway House, Hudson's Bay, 7th July, 1842, after describing the wide extent of region he had visited in his missionary tour, says, 'I should be remiss in neglecting to acknowledge, which I do with unfeigned gratitude and pleasure, the kindness I have invariably received from the officers of the Honourable Hudson's Bay Company in the several posts which I visited, and the direct assistance afforded me in every instance, as well as the facilities which I almost everywhere experienced, in communicating the instructions of Christianity to the servants of the Honourable Company, and to the natives.'—(*Wesleyan Missionary Notices*, Oct. 1842, p. 157.)

A native Indian Missionary adverting to the state of religion among the Indians, when addressing the Annual Meeting of the Wesleyan Society in London, in May, 1843, said: 'We met with the Governor of the Honourable Hudson's Bay Company, and he gave us all the encouragement he could to go into his territory, assuring us that he would supply us with any little articles of which we were in need. We mended up the old canoe again, and went to Fort William, where we were very kindly received by all the officers of the Company.'—(*Wesleyan Missionary Notices*, June and July 1843, p. 320.)

In various places the Wesleyan Society and their Ministers refer to the '*direct sanction and valuable pecuniary aid afforded to it by the Hudson's Bay Company, and anticipate much advantage from the presence and co-operation of Sir George Simpson (the Governor of the Hudson's Company's territories) in the great work of Christian charity.*'



In the *Wesleyan Missionary Report for 1843*, referring to their station at Fort Edmonton, the Society remark: 'Mr. Rundle's situation is one particularly trying; the people around him are chiefly Roman Catholics; and the priest from Red River has this summer visited extensively both the Company's posts and the Indians, and I fear thrown many obstacles in his way. Mr. Harriot, the gentleman in charge of Edmonton House, has cheerfully assisted in advancing the great work among the aborigines; and as that gentleman is the best speaker of the Cree language to be found among Europeans, his services are invaluable to us. He has acquired a thorough knowledge of the Cree character, and has this summer presented me with translations of the Morning Service, the Baptismal Service, several Collects, the first seven chapters of St. Matthew's Gospel, and a good collection of Hymns translated from our Hymn book.'—(P. 161.)

The *Wesleyan Missionary Notices for January 1843*, again advert in several places to the encouragement given by the officers of the Hudson's Bay Company to the dissemination of the Gospel. The following is an extract from a letter and journal of the Rev. James Evans, General Superintendent of the Wesleyan Missions in the Hudson's Bay territories, dated August 1841:—  
'Since my arrival in the country, I have visited York Factory, of which I made the Committee aware last autumn. On my return, I remained at Norway House until December, and left it, early in that month, to visit the posts within my reach. During the winter I visited Moose Lake, the Pas, Cumberland House, Shoal River, Fort Pelly, Beaver Creek, Red River, on my way to Fort Alexander and Berring's River; and returned to Norway House at the latter end of March. *I was received at every post of the Honourable Company with the greatest kindness, and experienced every attention from the gentlemen in charge.* I endeavoured to discharge the duties incumbent upon me, with an eye to the glory of God, in the salvation of sinners; and trust, that the fruits of my humble labours will appear on the day of eternity.

‘ I intend, by the Divine blessing, to visit the following places during a journey, which it is my purpose to commence, namely, Cumberland, Carlton, Fort Pitt, and Edmonton, where I hope to meet my good brother, the Rev. Mr. Rundle. After spending a few weeks in that vicinity, I shall proceed, by winter conveyance (snow shoes and dog carriages) to Forts Jaspar, Assiniboine, Lesser Slave Lake, Dunvegan, Vermillion, Chippewyan, Feud du Lac, La Crosse, Green Lake, and back by Carlton ; thence to Norway House, by the Saskatchewan or Athabasca boats, reaching Norway House in June or July 1842. *The journey is undertaken with the decided approbation of the Governor in Chief Sir George Simpson, who kindly assured me that he would himself, in passing the Saskatchewan see that every preparation should be made for me to proceed thence.* Before my return, should I succeed in my proposed tour, I shall travel about *six thousand miles.* During this time I hope to preach the everlasting Gospel to hundreds who never heard the joyful sound ; and I humbly trust that, in a short period, not a post belonging to the Honourable Company will be found where the glad news of salvation by Christ shall not have been heard. I shall, I feel convinced, have the co-operation of my brethren here, and of the Committee at home, and *the unlimited aid of the Honourable Company’s officers,* in carrying out this great object. I likewise become better acquainted with the state, wants, and general character of the country, as well as with the number, disposition, and languages of the natives. I feel assured of the Divine protection and blessing.

‘ *We have great cause of gratitude to Almighty God, that we are saved from that scourge of poor Indians, the ‘ fire waters’ (rum), the use of this being by the Honourable Company prohibited to a great extent in the country ; an arrangement equally wise and benevolent.*

September 1st:—‘ I found Mr. Grant (one of the Company’s officers) at Oxford House, anxious to make my night’s stay as comfortable as possible. I preached to the Honourable Company’s officers and servants, and several natives attended. At the

close of the service I baptized an adult, who expressed a determination to forsake sin and cleave to the Lord; and six children; and solemnized two marriages.

'7th.—To-day my worthy brother Rundle left by the Saskatchewan boat for Edmonton. About two months, with God's blessing, will bring him thither; during which time he must sleep on the ground, wet or dry, not unfrequently without erecting his cloth tent, as sometimes it cannot be pitched, Rain or fair, heat or cold, he must sit in the open boat, and look to Heaven for present and eternal comfort. *Every thing which the fort could supply was kindly furnished, in order to make his voyage as comfortable as circumstances would permit.*

'January 19th, 1842.—Thermometer 42° below zero. It is excessively cold. Water from the tea-kettle, nearly boiling, being poured into a tin plate to the depth of about half an inch, became frozen and solid, or sufficiently so to slide out, when warmed on the under side, in seven minutes and a half.

'20th.—We made Fort Pelly at ten o'clock.—Thermometer 25°.

'Sunday, 24th.—I preached to an attentive congregation, several professing their determination to seek and serve the Lord.

'26th.—We have prayers every night at seven, at which time I always deliver a short discourse, or expound some portion of Scripture, catechize the children, and teach them prayers at half-past eight.

'28th.—I have had several interviews with a sick Indian, who is taken care of in the fort. He appears anxious to receive instruction, but is very deaf.

'Sunday 31.—I preached at eleven, at three, and at seven o'clock, and baptized eight after the forenoon service.

'February 1st.—I left Fort Pelly, *having experienced every kindness and attention from Dr. Todd, and derived great satisfaction in seeing a marked attention to the word of life.*

'5th.—We made Beaver Creek House, and found all well. Thanks to our great Preserver.

6th.—*We experienced great kindness from Mr. and Mrs. M'Kay; an excellent Cree speaker kindly furnished me with a translation of*

*the Lord's prayer.* We held prayers at eight p. m. in a large fort, and had a good congregation : several Indians encamped in the neighbourhood.

‘ *Sunday, 7th.*—I preached at eleven and at six. I baptized three persons connected with the fort ; *much pains having been taken by the gentleman in charge, and his family, to instruct those connected with the establishment.*

‘ **RAINY LAKE.**—Great praise is due to the gentleman in charge of this post, for the readiness with which he has co-operated with the Missionary in promoting the interests of the Mission. A change has been made this year, and Nichol Finlayson, Esq., with whom I spent the winter of 1838 on Lake Superior, is at present at Rainy Lake ; by whom I am satisfied, every assistance will be afforded.’

The following extracts are copied from the journal of Mr. Rundell :— ‘ His station is the most westerly position occupied by this Society, and is in the immediate vicinity of the Rocky Mountains, in which are the sources of those great rivers which water the American continent, and flow into the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. The tribes of Indians which occupy the extensive plains in their neighbourhood, are both numerous and powerful, and are also in better circumstances than their brethren in other parts of the country. Mr. Rundell has the honour of being the first Protestant Missionary who has been stationed among them. He reached Edmonton House on the 18th of September, 1840, after having traversed, from the time of his landing in New York, about three thousand five hundred miles. He received a most cordial welcome from the officer in charge, and immediately commenced his Missionary labours and toils, in humble dependence upon Him, who hath said for the encouragement of his servants, ‘ Lo I am with you alway, even even unto the end of the world.’

‘ *February 22nd, 1841.*—I reached Rocky Mountain House, and was very kindly received by J. H. Harriott, Esq., the gentleman in charge. I found several Indians at the Fort, and, shortly after my arrival, another party arrived from the plains. Great warmth of feeling was expressed by them on seeing me. Their dresses

were profusely adorned with beads and gay embroidery, with porcupine quills, and other ornaments. Whilst I was saluting them, some kissed me; others, after shaking me by the hand, passed both hands over part of my dress, uttering at the same time a kind of prayer; and others gave me their left hand, because nearest the heart.

*'24th.*—A large party of Blackfeet and Piegans arrived, and their entrance into the Fort presented a very novel appearance. The first that came were the Piegans, and the ceremony commenced with singing some rude and barbarous sounds. They then marched in order to the Fort, the chief leading the van, bringing with him a horse, (the head of which was striped with red ochre,) as an intended present for Mr. Harriott. After the firing of mutual salutes, and the horse being given to Mr. Harriott, the chief entered the Fort, followed by his party. The Blackfeet approached much in the same way, excepting that singing formed no part of the ceremony. Some of the chiefs' dresses looked very fine, and the needle-work on them would reflect no discredit on members of civilized communities.

*'25th.*—To-day a rumour spread among the Indians that I came down from Heaven in a piece of paper, and that the paper was opened by a gentleman belonging to the Forts, and so I made my first appearance upon earth!

*'26th.*—I met, in the evening, about a hundred and fifty or two hundred Indians, including women and some children.

*'27th March.*—I discoursed to the Indians twice on the Decalogue, which, I believe, produced great effect amongst them. I also addressed them on the subjects of baptism and marriage.

*'28th.*—I preached in the morning on the morals and duties of Christianity, and solemnized two marriages. The Indians were present to witness the ceremony, and, through an interpreter, I was enabled to convey to them lessons of instruction.

*'29th.*—The Indians left the Fort, and I engaged to visit them on my way to the Blackfeet camp.

*'April 1st.*—I left the Fort this morning, on horseback, for my intended visit to the plains. My kind friend, J. H. Harriott, Esq., accompanied me some distance from the Fort, and I was

then compelled to bid him adieu for a season. *The personal kindnesses received from that gentleman, during my stay with him, and also the assistances he afforded me in facilitating the objects of my mission, deserve my warmest commendations. I trust my visit to his fort will be made a blessing to many. Great attention was generally manifested by the officers and others; and, independent of the services on the Sunday, I was accustomed to preach once during the week to them, and also to hold regular family worship, which most in the fort attended.'*

One of the Wesleyan Ministers thus speaks of the Hudson's Bay Company's chief officer at Norway House, who, he says, has been 'at great pains in civilizing the Indians.'

'13th.—To-day I bade a sorrowful adieu to Mr. Ross, the Company's Officer at this fort, who left for York Factory, and according to all probability, will not return before my departure for the Saskatchewan. The kind and gentlemanly conduct manifested by him to me, since my residence at Norway House, deserves my warmest thanks. He has been my guide, counsellor, and friend.'

Of Mr. James Keith, the Company's Chief Officer at La Chine, the Mission reports that 'every preparation was made by him for the comfort and accommodation of the Missionaries on board the canoes, when proceeding from Canada to Rupert's Land, and nothing could exceed the respect and kindness with which they were treated.'

The Rev. Mr. Mason, in a letter dated 20th August, 1844, from Ross Ville, Hudson's Bay, to the Wesleyan Society, says, 'The gentlemen who visited our neat little village, expressed their surprise at the great change and improvement of the natives. Mr. Mactavish, from the Columbia, said, there was nothing equal to it on the other side of the Rocky Mountains. You will be much pleased to hear that Donald Ross, Esq., is again stationed at Norway House; he is, indeed, a friend to the red man's temporal and spiritual interests. His kindness and attention are uninterrupted. From the Company's servants we receive every assistance which they have in their power to afford us in carrying on the great work in which we are engaged.'

‘The Church, we trust, will be finished in a few months. *The Company’s men are constantly working at it. We need it much, as the school-room is far too small for the congregation.*’  
—(*Wesleyan Notices*, Feb. 1845, p. 29.)

Language of a similar tendency pervades all the Reports examined, and they sufficiently demonstrate the attention paid to Christian ordinances and duties by the Hudson’s Bay Company, and their officers and servants in North America.

The Wesleyan Mission in North-West America, consists of eight stations and four chapels, at Ross Ville, and Norway House, Lake Winipeg, Moose Factory, Lac la Pluie, and Forts Alexander and Edmonton, and Rocky Mountains. There are also in addition five preaching places. There are five Missionaries and assistants, one catechist, two day school teachers, two local preachers, 204 church members, 96 day scholars, and 2000 members attending public worship, of whom 174 members are full or accredited church members.

Commodore Wilkes, at p. 344 of his work, says, the American Missionaries are ‘daily receiving the kindest attentions and hospitality from the officers of the Hudson’s Bay Company.’

Any further evidence of the Christian conduct and benevolent policy of the Company, would be a work of supererogation.

It is not, however, solely in a collective capacity that a humane system has been pursued; as individuals, the officers of the Hudson’s Bay Company have manifested an anxious desire for the temporal welfare and spiritual improvement of the people around them, and are most undeserving of the opprobrium endeavoured to be cast on them, that ‘they are for the most part men of very limited information, doubtful exemplars to a people arriving so slowly at a social state,—wholly imbued with the mere spirit of trade,—few of them possessed of those generous sympathies and more enlarged views which are necessary for undertaking and carrying out any scheme of social amelioration. Their Deity is gold, to obtain which they trample down Christianity and benevolence.’—*Memorial of A. K. and J. Isbister and three others to the Secretary of State*, page 6.

## Part V.

---

### SUMMARY OF OBSERVATIONS, AND QUALIFICATIONS OF THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY FOR THE COLONIZATION OF VANCOUVER'S ISLAND.

---

THE several statements adduced in the previous pages, clearly show the means by which the Hudson's Bay Company have preserved a traffic in furs for nearly 200 years without any monopoly of the home market, thereby enriching England to the extent of at least twenty millions sterling; and now, although hemmed in by the enterprising spirit of the Americans on the South, and by the untiring industry of the Russians on the North, if upheld in their rights, supported by the Crown, and encouraged by enlightened public opinion, the Company, by the exercise of the means hitherto found successful, may long continue a valuable trade, which is nearly extinct in every other part of the globe.

Strong doubts have been expressed of the fitness of the Hudson's Bay Company for the settlement of Vancouver's Island, inasmuch (it is asserted) as they have heretofore pursued the fur trade to the neglect of colonization, but it has been overlooked that the position of the Company in the region west of the 'Rocky Mountains,' and in the Oregon country, was similar to that of a person leasing a grouse moor in Scotland for twenty-one years. It was not in the power of the Company to invite settlers to the banks of the Columbia River or to Vancouver's Island; they could make no grant of land, having themselves no better title than that of a hunting licence from the Crown, which, in 1838, reserved to itself the power of forming Colonies when and where it might be deemed necessary.

Moreover the Crown could not give the requisite title to the land, since Vancouver's Island, and the adjacent region was, until 1846, disputed territory. At the 'Red River,' the land being actually the property of the Company, it has been granted in leases for the full term of a thousand years, subject to a single payment of 7s. 6d. per acre; to residence thereon, to the cultivation within five years of one-tenth part of the demised land, and to a compliance with certain regulations, and local enactments framed by the late Earl of Selkirk, to



whom the Hudson's Bay Company made a large and liberal grant of territory in order to promote colonization.

The Company have not therefore failed in promoting colonization where they possessed the power of doing so; but where, for the above-mentioned reasons, they had not the right of leasing the land, they have themselves cultivated it to the utmost practicable extent, as exemplified at Fort Vancouver, on the banks of the Columbia River; and they have also aided their retired servants in the formation of agricultural stations at Puget's Sound, (Fort Nasquilly,) and on the banks of the Cowlitz River.

In addition, therefore, to the previously-recited evidence at pp. 21, 65, 72, and 104, of the agricultural proceedings of the Company, it may be useful to examine the report made by Commodore Wilkes to his Government, respecting the principal establishments of the Hudson's Bay Company, west of the Rocky Mountains, namely, Fort Vancouver, situated about 80 miles from the mouth of the Columbia River.

Approaching the station, the Commodore says,—‘ We came in at the back part of the village, which consists of about fifty comfortable log houses, placed in regular order on each side of the road. They are inhabited by the Company's servants, and were swarming with children, whites, half-breeds, and pure Indians. The Fort stands at some distance beyond the village, and to the eye appears like an upright wall of pickets, twenty-five feet high; this encloses the houses, shops, and magazines of the Company. The enclosure contains about four acres, which appear to be under full cultivation. Beyond the Fort large granaries were to be seen. At one end is Dr. M'Laughlin's house, built after the model of a French Canadian, of one story, weather-boarded, and painted white. It has a piazza and small flower-beds, with grape and other vines in front. Between the steps are two old cannons on sea carriages, with a few shot, to speak defiance to the natives, who no doubt look upon them as very formidable weapons of destruction. I mention these, as they are the only warlike instruments to my knowledge that are within the pickets of Vancouver, which differs from all the other forts in having no bastions, galleries, or loop-holes. Near by are the rooms for the clerks and visitors, with the blacksmiths' and coopers' shops.

In the centre stands the Roman Catholic chapel, and near by the flag-staff; beyond these again are the stores, magazines of powder, warerooms, and offices.

'We went immediately to Dr. M'Laughlin's quarters. He was not within; but we were kindly invited to enter, with the assurance that he would soon return. Only a few minutes elapsed before Dr. M'Laughlin came galloping up, having understood that we had preceded him. He is a tall, fine-looking person, of a very robust frame, with a frank, manly open countenance, and a florid complexion: his hair is perfectly white. He gave us that kind reception we had been led to expect from his well-known hospitality. He is of Scotch parentage, but by birth a Canadian, enthusiastic in disposition, possessing great energy of character, and extremely well suited for the situation he occupies, which requires great talent and industry. He at once ordered dinner for us, and we soon felt ourselves at home, having comfortable rooms assigned us, and being treated as part of the establishment.

'The situation of Vancouver is favourable for agricultural purposes, and it may be said to be the head of navigation for sea-going vessels. A vessel of fourteen feet draft of water may reach it in the lowest state of the river. The Columbia at this point makes a considerable angle, and is divided by two islands, which extend upwards about three miles, to where the upper branch of the Willamette joins it.

The Company's establishment at Vancouver is upon an extensive scale, and is worthy of the vast interest of which it is the centre. The residents mess at several tables; one for the chief factor and his clerks; one for their wives (it being against the regulations of the Company for their officers and their wives to take their meals together); another for the Missionaries; and another for the sick and the Catholic Missionaries. All is arranged in the best order, and, I should think, with great economy. Everything may be had within the Fort; they have an extensive apothecary's shop, a bakery, blacksmiths' and coopers' shops, trade offices for buying, others for selling, others again for keeping accounts and transacting business; shops for retail, where English manufactured articles may be purchased at as low a price, if not cheaper, than in the United States, consisting of cotton and woollen goods, ready-made clothing, ship

chandlery, earthen and ironware, and fancy articles; in short, everything, and of every kind and description, including all sorts of groceries, at an advance of 80 per cent. on the London prime cost. This is the established price at Vancouver, but at the other posts it is 100 per cent., to cover the extra expenses of transportation. All these articles are of good quality, and suitable for the servants, settlers, and visitors. Of the quantity on hand some idea may be formed from the fact that all the posts west of the Rocky Mountains get their annual supplies from this dépôt.

'Vancouver is the head quarters of the North-West or Columbian Department, which also includes New Caledonia; all the returns of furs are received here, and hither all accounts are transmitted for settlement. These operations occasion a large mass of business to be transacted at this establishment. Mr. Douglass, a chief factor, and the associate of Dr. McLaughlin, assists in this department, and takes sole charge in his absence.

'Dr. McLaughlin showed us our rooms, and told us that the bell was the signal for meals.

'Towards sun-set, tea-time arrived, and we obeyed the summons of the bell, when we were introduced to several of the gentlemen of the establishment; we met in a large hall, with a long table spread with abundance of good fare. Dr. McLaughlin took the head of the table, with myself on his right, Messrs. Douglass and Drayton on his left, and the others apparently according to their rank. I mention this, as every one appears to have a relative rank, privilege, and station assigned him, and military etiquette prevails. The meal lasts no longer than is necessary to satisfy hunger. With the officers, who are clerks, business is the sole object of their life, and one is entirely at a loss here who has nothing to do. Fortunately I found myself much engaged, and therefore it suited me. The agreeable company of Dr. McLaughlin and Mr. Douglass made the time at meals pass delightfully. Both of these gentlemen were kind enough to give up a large portion of their time to us, and I felt occasionally that we must be trespassing on their business hours. After meals, it is the custom to introduce pipes and tobacco. It was said that this practice was getting into disuse, but I should have concluded, from what I saw, that it was at its height.

‘Canadian French is generally spoken to the servants ; even those who come out from England, after a while, adopt it, and it is not a little amusing to hear the words they use, and the manner in which they pronounce them.

‘The routine of a day at Vancouver is perhaps the same throughout the year. At early dawn the bell is rung for the working parties, who soon after go to work ; the sound of the hammers, click of the anvils, the rumbling of the carts, with tinkling of bells, render it difficult to sleep after this hour. The bell rings again at eight, for breakfast ; at nine they resume their work, which continues till one ; then an hour is allowed for dinner, after which they work till six, when the labours of the day close. At five o’clock on Saturday afternoon the work is stopped, when the servants receive their weekly rations.

‘Vancouver is a large manufacturing, agricultural, and commercial depôt, and there are few, if any idlers, except the sick. Everybody seems to be in a hurry, whilst there appears to be no obvious reason for it

‘There are two large entrance gates to the Fort for waggons and carts, and one in the rear, leading to the granaries and the garden ; the latter is quite extensive, occupying four or five acres, and contains all kinds of vegetables and many kinds of fruit, with which the tables are abundantly supplied by the gardener, ‘Billy Bruce.’ After William Bruce’s first term of service had expired, he was desirous of returning to England, and was accordingly sent. This happened during the visit of Dr. McLaughlin to England. One day, an accidental meeting took place in a crowded street of London, where he begged Dr. McLaughlin to send him back to Vancouver. William Bruce was accordingly taken again into employ, and sent back in the next ship. In the meantime, however, he was sent to Chiswick, the seat of the Duke of Devonshire, to get a little more knowledge of his duties, and remained till the vessel sailed : but no place was like Vancouver to him ; and all his success continues to be compared with Chiswick, which he endeavours to surpass : this is alike creditable to both.

‘Besides the storehouses, there is also a granary, which is a frame building of two stories, and the only one, the rest being built of logs.

‘Mr. Douglass was kind enough to take me into the granary,

which contained wheat, flour, barley, and buckwheat. The wheat averaged sixty-three pounds to the bushel; barley yields twenty bushels to the acre; buckwheat, in some seasons, gives a good crop, but it is by no means certain, owing to the early frosts; oats do not thrive well; peas, beans, and potatoes yield abundantly; little or no hay is made, the cattle being able to feed all the year round on the natural hay, which they find very nutritious, and fatten upon it. The grass grows up rapidly in the beginning of summer; and the subsequent heat and drought convert it into hay, in which all the juices are preserved. Besides this, they have, on the prairies along the river, two luxuriant growths of grass, the first in the spring, and the second soon after the flowing of the river subsides, which is generally in July and August. The last crop lasts the remainder of the season. Neither do they require shelter, although they are penned in at night. The pens are moveable; and the use of them is not only for security against the wolves, but to manure the ground.

'The farm at Vancouver is about nine miles square. On this they have two dairies, and milk upwards of one hundred cows. There also two other dairies, situated on the Wapanto Island, on the Willamette, where they have one hundred and fifty cows, whose milk is employed, under the direction of imported dairymen, in making butter and cheese for the Russian settlements.

'They have likewise a grist and saw mill, both well constructed, about six miles above Vancouver, on the Columbia River.

'One afternoon we rode with Mr. Douglass to visit the dairy-farm, which lies to the west of Vancouver, on the Callepuya. This was one of the most beautiful rides I had yet taken, through fine prairies, adorned with large oak, ash, and pines. The large herds of cattle feeding and reposing under the trees, gave an air of civilization to the scene: that is the only thing wanting in the other parts of the territory. The water was quite high; and many of the little knolls were surrounded by it, which had the appearance of small islets breaking through the wide expanse of overflowing water.

'This dairy is removed every year, which is found advantageous to the ground, and affords the cattle better pasturage. The stock on the Vancouver farm is about three thousand head of cattle, two thousand five hundred sheep, and about three hundred brood mares.

' At the dairy we were regaled with most excellent milk ; and found the whole establishment well managed by a Canadian and his wife. They churn in barrel machines, of which there are several. All the cattle look extremely well, and are rapidly increasing in numbers. The cows give milk at the age of eighteen months. Those of the California breed give a very small quantity of milk, but when crossed with those from the United States and England, do very well. I saw two or three very fine bulls that had been imported from England. The sheep have lambs twice a-year ; those of the California breed yield a very inferior kind of wool, which is inclined to be hairy near the hide, and is much matted. This breed has been crossed with the Leicester, Bakewell, and other breeds, which has much improved it. The fleeces of the mixed breed are very heavy, weighing generally eight pounds, and some as much as twelve. Merinos have been tried, but they are not found to thrive.

' The Californian horses are not equal to those raised in Oregon : those bred near Walla-Walla are in the most repute.

' In one of our rides we visited the site of the first fort at Vancouver ; it is less than a mile from the present position, and is just on the brow of the upper prairie. The view from this place is truly beautiful ; the noble river can be traced in all its windings for a long distance through the cultivated prairie, with its groves and clumps of trees ; beyond, the eye sweeps over an interminable forest, melting into a blue haze, from which Mount Hood, capped with its eternal snows, rises in great beauty. The tints of purple which appear in the atmosphere are, so far as I am aware, peculiar to this country. This site was abandoned in consequence of the difficulty of obtaining water, and its distance from the river, which compelled them to transport every article up a high and rugged road. The latter difficulty was encountered in the first location on the upper prairie, because it was said that the lower one was occasionally flooded ; but, although this may have happened formerly, it is not found to occur at present.

' I also visited the grist mill, which is situated on a small stream, but owing to the height of the river, which threw a quantity of back-water on the wheel, it was not in action. The mill has one run of stones, and is a well-built edifice. Annexed to it is the house of the

mill, who is also the watch-maker of the neighbourhood. The mill is amply sufficient for all the wants of the Company, and of the surrounding country. The saw-mill is two miles beyond the grist-mill. A similar mistake has been made in choosing its position, for the mill is placed so low that for the part of the season when they have most water they are unable to use it. There are in it several runs of saws, and it is remarkably well built. In few buildings, indeed, can such materials be seen as are here used. The quality of timber cut into boards is inferior to what we should deem merchantable in the United States, and is little better than our hemlock. The boards are shipped to the Sandwich Islands; and we here found the brig *Wave* taking in a cargo of timber. These boards sell at Oahu for eighty dollars per thousand. I could not ascertain their cost here. About twenty men (Canadians and Sandwich Islanders) are employed at the mill.

‘They have built a large smith’s shop here, which, besides doing the work of the mill, makes all the axes and hatchets used by the trappers. The iron and steel are imported; the tools are manufactured at a much less price than those imported, and are more to be depended on. A trapper’s success, in fact, depends upon his axe; and, on this being lost or broken, he necessarily relinquishes his labours, and returns unsuccessful. I was surprised at seeing the celerity with which these axes were made. Fifty of them, it is said, can be manufactured in a day, and twenty-five are accounted an ordinary day’s work. They are eagerly sought after by the Indians, who are very particular that the axe should have a certain shape, somewhat like a tomahawk.’—(Vol. iv., pp. 326, 336.)

The Commodore visited several other stations, and thus describes Fort Nisqually, to which his ships were piloted by the first officer of the Hudson’s Bay Company’s steamer, whose services were kindly offered by Captain M’Neil, the Commander, who gave all possible aid to the American squadron in its surveys:—‘Twelve miles more brought us to the anchorage off Nisqually, where both vessels dropped their anchors about eight o’clock. Here we found an English steamer undergoing repairs. Soon after we anchored, I had the pleasure of a visit from Mr. Anderson, who is in charge of the fort, and Captain M’Neil. They gave me a warm welcome, and

offered every assistance in their power to aid me in my operations.

‘ Nothing can exceed the beauty of these waters, and their safety; not a shoal exists within the Straits of Juan de Fuca, Admiralty Inlet, Puget Sound, or Hood’s Canal, that can in any way interrupt their navigation by a seventy-four gun ship. I venture nothing in saying, there is no country in the world possessing waters equal to these.

‘ The anchorage off Nisqually is very contracted, in consequence of the rapid shelving of the bank, that soon drops off into deep water. The shore rises abruptly to a height of about two hundred feet, and on the top of the ascent is an extended plain, covered with pine, oak, and ash trees, scattered here and there so as to form a park-like scene. The hill-side is mounted by a well-constructed road of easy ascent. From the summit of the road the view is beautiful, over the Sound and its many islands, with Mount Olympus covered with snow for a back-ground. Fort Nisqually, with its outbuildings and enclosure, stands back about half a mile from the edge of the table land.

‘ In returning the visits of Mr. Anderson and Captain McNeil, I had an opportunity of seeing the so-called fort. It is constructed of pickets, enclosing a space about two hundred feet square, with four corner bastions. Within this enclosure are the agents’ stores, and about half a dozen houses, built of logs, and roofed with bark. This fort was considered quite large when it was first established, but since it has become an agricultural post as well as a trading one, it is found to be too small. Its locality is also ill chosen, on account of the difficulty of obtaining water, which has to be brought from a distance of nearly a mile. I was informed that there was now little necessity for any sort of protection against the Indians, who are but few in number, and very peaceably disposed.

‘ After spending some time in conversing about my plans, Mr. Anderson was kind enough to show me his garden, which is an enclosure just without the pickets. Here I saw peas a foot high, strawberries and gooseberries in full bloom, and some of the former nearly ripe, with salad that had gone to seed, three feet high, very large and thrifty.



‘Near by were to be seen fine fields of grain, large barns and sheepfolds, agricultural implements, and workmen with cattle engaged in the various employments of husbandry.

‘In connection with the Company’s establishment at Nisqually, they have a large dairy, several hundred head of cattle, and among them seventy milch cows, which yield a large supply of butter and cheese; they have also large crops of wheat, peas, and oats, and were preparing the ground for potatoes. These operations are conducted by a farmer and dairyman, brought from England expressly to superintend these affairs. A few Indians are engaged in tending the flocks, and the Company’s servants are almost exclusively employed as labourers.’

On his route from Fort Nisqually to Fort Vancouver, the Commodore visited another of the Puget Sound Company’s establishments, on the Cowlitz River, in latitude 46° 50’ north, longitude 123°, which he thus describes: ‘After passing extensive cammass plains we reached the Company’s farm on the Cowlitz, which occupies an extensive prairie on the banks of that river.

‘They have here six or seven hundred acres enclosed and under cultivation, with several large granaries, a large farm house, and numerous outbuildings to accommodate the dairy, workmen, cattle, &c. The grounds appeared well prepared, and were covered with a luxuriant crop of wheat. At the farther end of the prairie was to be seen a settlement, with its orchards, &c.; and between the trees, the chapel and parsonage of the Catholic Mission gave an air of civilization to the whole. The degree of progress resembled that of a settlement of several years’ standing in our Western States, with the exception, however, of the remains of the conquered forest; for here the ground is ready for the plough, and nature seems, as it were, to invite the husbandman to his labours.

‘We were kindly received by Mr. Forrest, the superintendent, who quickly made arrangements for canoes to carry us down the Cowlitz and Columbia River to Astoria, or Fort George. He also provided us with an excellent repast, and pressed us to remain overnight, which we would gladly have done, had I not found that it would be impossible for us to reach Astoria the next day if we did so.

' At this farm the Company have a large dairy, and are about erecting a saw and grist mill. The superintendent's dwelling is large, and built of well-hewn logs ; with the workmen's houses, &c., it forms quite a village.

' Large numbers of cattle were being brought in for the night, which is a very necessary precaution in Oregon, in consequence of the numerous wolves that are prowling about ; in some places it becomes necessary for the keeper to protect his beasts, even in the day-time. The cattle, at times, suffer from drought, in which case the Indians are sent across the river to cut fodder for them, in order to avoid sending the cattle to the cammass plains, where they would be subject to the loss of all their young.

The farm at the Cowlitz has no sort of defences about it, proving, as far as the Indians are concerned, that there is no danger of being molested ; indeed, their numbers here are too small to enable them to attempt any aggression, and their dependence on the Company for both food and clothing, too complete to allow them to quarrel, except among themselves ; and of such disputes the agent of the Company takes no sort of notice. The Indians belong to the Klackatuck tribe, though they have obtained the general name of the Cowlitz Indians. In a few years they will have passed away, and even now, I was informed, there are but three Indian women remaining in the tribe. The mortality that has attacked them has made sad ravages ; for only a few years since they numbered upwards of a hundred, while they are now said to be less than thirty. The quantity of land actually under cultivation here is six hundred acres, most of which is in wheat. Mr. Forrest told me that the first year it had produced ten bushels per acre, but the present one it was thought the yield would be double\*.

' Around the superintendent's house is a kitchen garden, in which all the usual horticultural plants of the United States were growing luxuriantly ; the climate was thought to be particularly well adapted to them.'—(Pp. 315, 316.)

The agricultural farm at Puget Sound (Fort Nisqually), as also that at the Cowlitz River, does not actually belong to the Hudson's

\* The crop at the end of 1841 was 7000 bushels.

Bay Company; the Puget Sound Association has been formed principally by the officers and retired servants of the Company, who have subscribed a capital of £200,000, on which ten per cent. has been paid up.

This farm aids in the supply of grain, butter, cheese, &c., for the forts and stations of the Hudson's Bay Company on the western coast of America, and it furnishes supplies for the Russian stations at Sitka and to the northward. Grain is also shipped for the Sandwich Islands, where the Hudson's Bay Company have an agency; and a cargo of corn has been recently sent to China.

The facts herein stated need no further comment; but there are two points in favour of the extension of agriculture and the promotion of colonization by the Hudson's Bay Company, which appear to have been but little noticed in the recent parliamentary discussions:—*1st*, The necessity of providing food for numerous and distant posts where corn will not grow: *2nd*, That with every precaution which a Company with exclusive rights can adopt, the fur-bearing animals must in the course of time diminish, and the Hudson's Bay Company, who have shown no deficiency in far-sighted views, are not likely to neglect providing for coming emergencies, or to lose the opportunity of securing new fields for the employment of energy and capital, which can only be done by colonization.

A consideration of these circumstances, and a recognition of the principle that colonization can be most effectually conducted by corporate bodies, has doubtless had due weight with the Minister of the Crown, when acceding to the proposition that Vancouver's Island be vested in an association, who have given solid proofs of sound policy, by maintaining a most difficult position with honour and profit to themselves and to their country since the reign of Charles II.; that has shown both ability and willingness to colonize, by the formation of the Red River settlement, and by promoting the flourishing farms on the Columbia and Cowlitz Rivers; which has at this moment several posts and stations, not only in New Caledonia, but also an excellent fort and establishment on the adjacent shores of Vancouver's Island; which possesses on the spot ships, steamers, well-trained functionaries, and every other requisite for

attaining, without delay, the desired end, namely, the immediate occupation, by British subjects, of the largest and most important island on the Pacific coast of the American continent; and as the colonization of the island is in unison with the existing and prospective interests of the Hudson's Bay Company, it is to be hoped that, when the whole case is known, a cordial co-operation will be promptly accorded, and that a now comparatively useless appanage of the Crown may be converted into a thriving and happy home for a large portion of the various classes of society who are suffering from the effects of a redundant population and want of occupation, and who may there find that scope for enterprise, skill, and labour, which no Government, however wise and zealous in its exertions, can afford them in England.

Some of the points on which facts and evidence have been adduced in the previous pages, may be summarily stated as follows :—

*1st.*—The Royal Charter granted by King Charles II., in 1670, to the Hudson's Bay Company conveys, in perpetuity, the territorial right, and exclusive privilege of trade, over certain regions in British North America.

*2nd.*—The validity of this Charter has been acknowledged by successive Sovereigns down to Her Present Most Gracious Majesty, —by Parliament on different occasions,—and by diplomatic arrangements with Foreign States.

*3rd.*—The Royal Licences of exclusive trade with the Indians in certain parts of North America, granted to the Hudson's Bay Company and to the Agents of the North-West Company in 1821, and to the Hudson's Bay Company solely in 1838, recognised the rights conceded by the Royal Charter of 1670, and granted an extension of exclusive traffic in furs over territories declared neutral between Great Britain, the United States, and Russia.

*4th.*—Those Royal Licences did not therefore supersede the Royal Charter of 1670; they merely extended the right of exclusive trade over some territory, regarding which, doubts might be entertained, whether it came within the scope contemplated on the issue of the original Charter to Prince Rupert, and the distinguished

Associates of His Royal Highness ; and on the termination of the existing Licence, for exclusive trade, in 1860, the Royal Charter granted by King Charles II. will remain intact, and the Hudson's Bay Company will continue to be vested with all the powers conceded to the Company in the year 1670.

*5th.*—The Royal Charter, and the Licences of 1821 and of 1838, were granted for the fulfilment of great national objects, on avowed grounds of public utility, and for the attainment of results which could not otherwise have been accomplished.

*6th.*—The greater part of the territories belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company, and also the larger portion of the region over which the right of exclusive trade with the Indians has been granted, are not adapted for European colonization, and are almost solely useful for the obtainment of furs and fish, which, owing to the nature of the country and the habits of the aborigines, experience has proved it to be impossible for private individuals to obtain with equal success.

*7th.*—By the occupation of several positions in the Oregon region, and other places west of the Rocky Mountains, the Hudson's Bay Company have secured for Great Britain a large extent of country on the coast of the Pacific Ocean, including the important island of Vancouver, which would probably otherwise have been seized by the United States or by Russia, to the manifest disadvantage of England.

*8th.*—The constitution and working of the Hudson's Bay Company is equitable and effective,—well adapted to promote the energetic and continuous services of experienced functionaries, and admirably devised for securing order, obedience, and probity.

*9th.*—Wherever it has been found practicable to promote colonization, or to form agricultural establishments, the Hudson's Bay Company and their servants have spared no labour or expense, as exemplified by the Red River Settlement, Fort Vancouver, and the farms at Puget's Sound, and at the Cowlitz River.

*10th.*—No other Association seems so well adapted, as the Hudson's Bay Company, for effecting the colonization of the island of Vancouver.

## APPENDIX.

---

### A.

COPY of the ROYAL CHARTER for incorporating the HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY, granted by his Majesty King CHARLES the Second, in the 22nd year of his reign, A.D. 1670.

CHARLES THE SECOND, by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c., To ALL to whom these presents shall come greeting: WHEREAS our dear and entirely beloved Cousin, Prince Rupert, Count Palatine of the Rhine, Duke of Bavaria and Cumberland, &c.; Christopher Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, Henry Lord Arlington, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir John Robinson, and Sir Robert Vyner, Knights and Baronets; Sir Peter Colleton, Baronet; Sir Edward Hungerford, Knight of the Bath; Sir Paul Neele, Knight; Sir John Griffith and Sir Philip Carteret, Knights; James Hayes, John Kirke, Francis Millington, William Prettyman, John Fenn, Esquires; and John Portman, Citizen and Goldsmith of London; have, at their own great cost and charges, undertaken an expedition for Hudson's Bay, in the north-west part of America, for the discovery of a new passage into the South Sea, and for the finding some trade for furs, minerals and other considerable commodities, and by such their undertaking have already made such discoveries as do encourage them to proceed further in pursuance of their said design, by means whereof there may probably arise very great advantage to us and our kingdom: AND WHEREAS the said Undertakers, for their further encouragement in the said design, have humbly besought us to incorporate them, and grant unto them and their successors the sole trade and commerce of all those seas, straits, bays, rivers, lakes, creeks, and sounds, in whatsoever latitude they shall be, that lie within the entrance of the straits, commonly called Hudson's Straits, together with all the lands, countries and territories upon the coasts and confines of the seas, straits, bays, lakes, rivers, creeks and sounds aforesaid, which are not now actually possessed by any of our subjects, or by the subjects of any other Christian Prince or State: Now KNOW YE, that we, being desirous to promote all endeavours tending to the public good of our people, and to encourage the said undertaking, HAVE, of our especial grace, certain knowledge and mere motion, given, granted, ratified and confirmed, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do give, grant, ratify and confirm, unto our said Cousin, Prince Rupert, Christopher Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, Henry Lord Arlington, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir John Robinson, Sir Robert Vyner, Sir Peter Colleton, Sir Edward Hungerford, Sir Paul Neele, Sir John Griffith and Sir Philip Carteret, James Hayes, John Kirke, Francis Millington, William Prettyman, John Fenn and John Portman, that they, and such others as shall be admitted into the said society as is hereafter expressed, shall be one body corporate and politic, in deed and in name, by the name of "The Governor and

Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay," and them by the name of "The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay," one body corporate and politic, in deed and in name, really and fully for ever, for us, our heirs and successors, we do make, ordain, constitute, establish, confirm and declare by these presents, and that by the same name of Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, they shall have perpetual succession, and that they and their successors, by the name of "The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay," be, and at all times hereafter shall be, personable and capable in law to have, purchase, receive, possess, enjoy and retain lands, rents, privileges, liberties, jurisdictions, franchises and hereditaments, of what kind, nature or quality soever they be, to them and their successors; and also to give, grant, demise, alien, assign and dispose lands, tenements, and hereditaments, and to do and execute all and singular other things by the same name that to them shall or may appertain to do; and that they and their successors, by the name of "The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay," may plead and be impleaded, answer and be answered, defend and be defended, in whatsoever courts and places, before whatsoever judges and justices, and other persons and officers, in all and singular actions, pleas, suits, quarrels, causes and demands whatsoever, of whatsoever kind, nature or sort, in such manner and form as any other our liege people of this our realm of England, being persons able and capable in law, may or can have, purchase, receive, possess, enjoy, retain, give, grant, demise, alien, assign, dispose, plead, defend and be defended, do, permit and execute; and that the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, and their successors, may have a common seal to serve for all the causes and businesses of them and their successors, and that it shall and may be lawful to the said Governor and Company, and their successors, the same seal, from time to time, at their will and pleasure, to break, change, and to make anew or alter, as to them shall seem expedient: AND FURTHER WE WILL, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, we do ordain, that there shall be from henceforth one of the same Company to be elected and appointed in such form as hereafter in these presents is expressed, which shall be called the Governor of the said Company; and that the said Governor and Company shall or may elect seven of their number, in such form as hereafter in these presents is expressed, which shall be called the Committee of the said Company, which Committee of seven, or any three of them, together with the Governor or Deputy Governor of the said Company for the time being, shall have the direction of the voyages of and for the said Company, and the provision of the shipping and merchandizes thereunto belonging, and also the sale of all merchandizes, goods and other things returned, in all or any the voyages or ships of or for the said Company, and the managing and handling of all other business, affairs and things belonging to the said Company: AND WE WILL, ordain, and grant by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, that they the said Governor and Company, and their successors, shall from henceforth for ever be ruled, ordered and governed according to such manner and form as is hereafter in these presents expressed, and not otherwise; and that they shall

have, hold, retain and enjoy the grants, liberties, privileges, jurisdictions and immunities only hereafter in these presents granted and expressed, and no other: And for the better execution of our will and grant in this behalf, WE HAVE ASSIGNED, nominated, constituted and made, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, WE DO ASSIGN, nominate, constitute and make our said Cousin, PRINCE RUPERT, to be the first and present Governor of the said Company, and to continue in the said office from the date of these presents until the 10th November then next following, if he, the said Prince Rupert, shall so long live, and so until a new Governor be chosen by the said Company in form hereafter expressed: AND ALSO WE HAVE assigned, nominated and appointed, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, WE DO assign, nominate and constitute, the said Sir John Robinson, Sir Robert Vyner, Sir Peter Colleton, James Hayes, John Kirke, Francis Millington and John Portman to be the seven first and present Committees of the said Company, from the date of these presents until the said 10th day of November then also next following, and so until new Committees shall be chosen in form hereafter expressed: AND FURTHER WE WILL and grant by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, that it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor and Company for the time being, or the greater part of them present at any public assembly, commonly called the Court General, to be holden for the said Company, the Governor of the said Company being always one, from time to time to elect, nominate and appoint one of the said Company to be Deputy to the said Governor, which Deputy shall take a corporal oath, before the Governor and three or more of the Committee of the said Company for the time being, well, truly and faithfully to execute his said office of Deputy to the Governor of the said Company, and after his oath so taken shall and may from time to time, in the absence of the said Governor, exercise and execute the office of Governor of the said Company, in such sort as the said Governor ought to do: AND FURTHER WE WILL and grant by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, unto the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, and their successors, that they, or the greater part of them, whereof the Governor for the time being or his Deputy to be one, from time to time, and at all times hereafter, shall and may have authority and power, yearly and every year, between the first and last day of November, to assemble and meet together in some convenient place, to be appointed from time to time by the Governor, or in his absence by the Deputy of the said Governor for the time being, and that they being so assembled, it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor or Deputy of the said Governor, and the said Company for the time being, or the greater part of them which then shall happen to be present, whereof the Governor of the said Company or his Deputy for the time being to be one, to elect and nominate one of the said Company, which shall be Governor of the said Company for one whole year then next following, which person being so elected and nominated to be Governor of the said Company as is aforesaid, before he be admitted to the execution of the said office, shall take a corporal oath before the last Governor, being his predecessor or his Deputy, and any three or more of the Committee of the said Company for the time being, that he shall from time to time well and truly execute the office of Governor of the said Company in all things concerning



the same ; and that immediately after the same oath so taken, he shall and may execute and use the said office of Governor of the said Company for one whole year from thence next following : And in like sort we will and grant, that as well every one of the above-named to be of the said Company or Fellowship, as all others hereafter to be admitted or free of the said Company, shall take a corporal oath before the Governor of the said Company or his Deputy for the time being to such effect as by the said Governor and Company, or the greater part of them, in any public court to be held for the said Company, shall be in reasonable or legal manner set down and devised, before they shall be allowed or admitted to trade or traffic as a freeman of the said Company : **AND FURTHER WE WILL** and grant by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, that the said Governor or Deputy Governor, and the rest of the said Company, and their successors for the time being, or the greater part of them, whereof the Governor or Deputy Governor from time to time to be one, shall and may from time to time, and at all times hereafter, have power and authority, yearly and every year, between the first and last day of November, to assemble and meet together in some convenient place, from time to time to be appointed by the said Governor of the said Company, or in his absence by his Deputy ; and that they being so assembled, it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor or his Deputy, and the Company for the time being, or the greater part of them, which then shall happen to be present, whereof the Governor of the said Company or his Deputy for the time being to be one, to elect and nominate seven of the said Company, which shall be a Committee of the said Company for one whole year from then next ensuing, which persons being so elected and nominated to be a Committee of the said Company as aforesaid, before they be admitted to the execution of their office, shall take a corporal oath before the Governor or his Deputy, and any three or more of the said Committee of the said Company, being their last predecessors, that they and every of them shall well and faithfully perform their said office of Committees in all things concerning the same, and that immediately after the said oath so taken, they shall and may execute and use their said office of Committees of the said Company, for one whole year from thence next following : **AND MOREOVER**, our will and pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, **WE DO GRANT** unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, that when and as often as it shall happen, the Governor or Deputy-Governor of the said Company for the time being, at any time within one year after that he shall be nominated, elected and sworn to the office of the Governor of the said Company, as is aforesaid, to die or to be removed from the said office, which Governor or Deputy Governor not demeaning himself well in his said office, **WE WILL** to be removable at the pleasure of the rest of the said Company, or the greater part of them which shall be present at their public assemblies, commonly called their General Courts holden for the said Company, that then and so often it shall and may be lawful to and for the residue of the said Company for the time being, or the greater part of them, within a convenient time after the death or removing of any such Governor or Deputy Governor, to assemble themselves in such convenient place as they shall think fit, for the election of the Governor or Deputy Governor of the said Company ; and that the said Company, or the greater part

of them, being then and there present, shall and may, then and there, before their departure from the said place, elect and nominate one other of the said Company to be Governor or Deputy Governor for the said Company, in the place and stead of him that so died or was removed; which person being so elected and nominated to the office of Governor or Deputy Governor of the said Company, shall have and exercise the said office for and during the residue of the said year, taking first a corporal oath, as is aforesaid, for the due execution thereof; and this to be done from time to time so often as the case shall so require: AND ALSO, our will and pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, we do grant unto the said Governor and Company, that when and as often as it shall happen any person or persons of the Committee of the said Company for the time being, at any time within one year next after that they or any of them shall be nominated, elected and sworn to the office of Committee of the said Company as is aforesaid, to die or to be removed from the said office, which Committees not demeaning themselves well in their said office, we will to be removable at the pleasure of the said Governor and Company, or the greater part of them, whereof the Governor of the said Company for the time being or his Deputy to be one, that then and so often, it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor, and the rest of the Company for the time being, or the greater part of them, whereof the Governor for the time being or his Deputy to be one, within convenient time after the death or removing of any of the said Committee, to assemble themselves in such convenient place as is or shall be usual and accustomed for the election of the Governor of the said Company, or where else the Governor of the said Company for the time being or his Deputy shall appoint: And that the said Governor and Company, or the greater part of them, whereof the Governor for the time being or his Deputy to be one, being then and there present, shall and may, then and there, before their departure from the said place, elect and nominate one or more of the said Company to be of the Committee of the said Company in the place and stead of him or them that so died, or were or was so removed, which person or persons so nominated and elected to the office of Committee of the said Company shall have and exercise the said office for and during the residue of the said year, taking first a corporal oath, as is aforesaid, for the due execution thereof, and this to be done from time to time, so often as the case shall require: And to the end the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay may be encouraged to undertake and effectually to prosecute the said design, of our more especial grace, certain knowledge and mere motion, WE HAVE given, granted, and confirmed, and by these presents, for us, our heirs, and successors, do give, grant, and confirm, unto the said Governors and Company, and their successors, the sole trade and commerce of all those seas, straits, bays, rivers, lakes, creeks, and sounds, in whatsoever latitude they shall be, that lie within the entrance of the straits commonly called Hudson's Straits, together with all the lands and territories upon the countries, coasts, and confines of the seas, bays, lakes, rivers, creeks and sounds aforesaid, that are not already actually possessed by or granted to any of our subjects, or possessed by the subjects of any other Christian Prince or State, with the fishing of all sorts of fish, whales, sturgeons, and all other royal fishes in the seas, bays, inlets and rivers within the premises, and the fish therein taken, together with the royalty of the sea upon the coasts within the limits afore-

*said, and all mines royal, as well discovered as not discovered, of gold, silver, gems, and precious stones, to be found or discovered within the territories, limits and places aforesaid, and that the said land be from henceforth reckoned and reputed as one of our plantations or colonies in America, called "Rupert's Land:"* AND FURTHER, WE DO by these presents, for us, our heirs, and successors, make, create and constitute the said Governor and Company for the time being, and their successors, the true and absolute lords and proprietors of the same territory, limits and places aforesaid, and of all other the premises, SAVING ALWAYS the faith, allegiance and sovereign dominion due to us, our heirs and successors, for the same, TO HAVE, HOLD, possess and enjoy the said territory, limits and places, and all and singular other the premises hereby granted as aforesaid, with their and every of their rights, members, jurisdictions, prerogatives, royalties and appurtenances whatsoever, to them the said Governor and Company, and their successors for ever, TO BE HOLDEN of us, our heirs and successors, as of our manor of East Greenwich, in our county of Kent, in free and common soccage, and not in capite or by knight's service; YIELDING AND PAYING yearly to us, our heirs and successors, for the same, two elks and two black beavers, whensoever and as often as we, our heirs and successors, shall happen to enter into the said countries, territories and regions hereby granted: AND FURTHER, our will and pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs, and successors, WE DO grant unto the said Governor and Company, and to their successors, that it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor and Company, and their successors, from time to time, to assemble themselves, for or about any the matters, causes, affairs or businesses of the said trade, in any place or places for the same convenient, within our dominions or elsewhere, and there to hold court for the said Company, and the affairs thereof; and that, also, it shall and may be lawful to and for them, and the greater part of them, being so assembled, and that shall then and there be present, in any such place or places, whereof the Governor or his Deputy for the time being to be one, to make, ordain and constitute such and so many reasonable laws, constitutions, orders and ordinances as to them, or the greater part of them, being then and there present, shall seem necessary and convenient for the good government of the said Company, and of all governors of colonies, forts and plantations, factors, masters, mariners and other officers employed or to be employed in any of the territories and lands aforesaid, and in any of their voyages; and for the better advancement and continuance of the said trade or traffic and plantations, and the same laws, constitutions, orders and ordinances so made, to put in, use and execute accordingly; and at their pleasure to revoke and alter the same or any of them, as the occasion shall require: And that the said Governor and Company, so often as they shall make, ordain or establish any such laws, constitutions, orders and ordinances in such form as aforesaid, shall and may lawfully impose, ordain, limit, and provide such pains, penalties and punishments upon all offenders, contrary to such laws, constitutions, orders and ordinances, or any of them, as to the said Governor and Company for the time being, or the greater part of them, then and there being present, the said Governor or his Deputy being always one, shall seem necessary, requisite or convenient for the observation of the same laws, constitutions, orders, and ordinances; and the same fines and amerciaments shall and may, by their officers and servants from time to time to be appointed for

that purpose, levy, take and have, to the use of the said Governor and Company, and their successors, without the impediment of us, our heirs, or successors, or of any the officers or ministers of us, our heirs or successors, and without any account therefore to us, our heirs, or successors, to be made: All and singular which laws, constitutions, orders and ordinances, so as aforesaid to be made, WE WILL to be duly observed and kept under the pains and penalties therein to be contained; so always as the said laws, constitutions, orders and ordinances, fines and americiaments, be reasonable, and not contrary or repugnant, but as near as may be agreeable to the laws, statutes or customs of this our realm: AND FURTHERMORE, of our ample and abundant grace, certain knowledge and mere motion, WE HAVE granted, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do grant unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, that they and their successors, and their factors, servants and agents, for them and on their behalf, and not otherwise, *shall for ever hereafter have, use and enjoy, not only the whole, entire and only trade and traffic, and the whole, entire and only liberty, use and privilege of trading and trafficking to and from the territory, limits and places aforesaid; but also the whole and entire trade and traffic to and from all havens, bays, creeks, rivers, lakes and seas, into which they shall find entrance or passage by water or land out of the territories, limits or places aforesaid; and to and with all the natives and people inhabiting, or which shall inhabit within the territories, limits and places aforesaid; and to and with all other nations inhabiting any the coasts adjacent to the said territories, limits and places which are not already possessed as aforesaid, or whereof the sole liberty or privilege of trade and traffic is not granted to any other of our subjects: AND WE, of our further royal favour, and of our more especial grace, certain knowledge and mere motion, HAVE granted, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do grant to the said Governor and Company, and to their successors, that neither the said territories, limits and places, hereby granted as aforesaid, nor any part thereof, nor the islands, havens, ports, cities, towns or places thereof or therein contained, shall be visited, frequented or haunted by any of the subjects of us, our heirs or successors, contrary to the true meaning of these presents, and by virtue of our prerogative royal, which we will not have in that behalf argued or brought into question: WE STRAITLY charge, command and prohibit, for us, our heirs and successors, all the subjects of us, our heirs and successors, of what degree or quality soever they be, that none of them, directly or indirectly, do visit, haunt, frequent or trade, traffic or adventure, by way of merchandize, into or from any of the said territories, limits or places hereby granted, or any or either of them, other than the said Governor and Company, and such particular persons as now be or hereafter shall be of that Company, their agents, factors and assigns, unless it be by the licence and agreement of the said Governor and Company in writing first had and obtained, under their common seal, to be granted, upon pain that every such person or persons that shall trade or traffic into or from any of the countries, territories or limits aforesaid, other than the said Governor and Company and their successors, shall incur our indignation, and the forfeiture and the loss of the goods, merchandizes and other things whatsoever, which so shall be brought into this realm of England, or any the dominions of the same, contrary to our said prohibition, or the purport or true meaning of these presents, for which the said Governor and Company shall find, take and seize in other*

places out of our dominions, where the said Company, their agents, factors or ministers shall trade, traffic or inhabit by virtue of these our letters patent, as also the ship and ships, with the furniture thereof, wherein such goods, merchandizes and other things shall be brought and found; the one-half of all the said forfeitures to be to us, our heirs and successors, and the other half thereof we do by these presents clearly and wholly, for us, our heirs and successors, give and grant unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors: AND FURTHER, all and every the said offenders, for their said contempt, to suffer such other punishment as to us, our heirs and successors, for so high a contempt, shall seem meet and convenient, and not to be in anywise delivered until they and every of them shall become bound unto the said Governor for the time being in the sum of One thousand pounds at the least, at no time then after to trade or traffic into any of the said places, seas, straits, bays, ports, havens or territories aforesaid, contrary to our express commandment in that behalf set down and published: AND FURTHER, of our more especial grace, we HAVE condescended and granted, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do grant unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, that we, our heirs and successors, will not grant liberty, licence or power to any person or persons whatsoever, contrary to the tenor of these our letters patent, to trade, traffic or inhabit, unto or upon any the territories, limits or places afore specified, contrary to the true meaning of these presents, without the consent of the said Governor and Company, or the most part of them: AND, of our more abundant grace and favour to the said Governor and Company, we do hereby declare our will and pleasure to be, that if it shall so happen that any of the persons free or to be free of the said Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, who shall, before the going forth of any ship or ships appointed for a voyage or otherwise, promise or agree, by writing under his or their hands, to adventure any sum or sums of money towards the furnishing any provision, or maintenance of any voyage or voyages, set forth, or to be set forth, or intended or meant to be set forth, by the said Governor and Company, or the more part of them present at any public assembly, commonly called their General Court, shall not within the space of twenty days next after warning given to him or them by the said Governor or Company, or their known officer or minister, bring in and deliver to the Treasurer or Treasurers appointed for the Company, such sums of money as shall have been expressed and set down in writing by the said person or persons, subscribed with the name of said Adventurer or Adventurers, that then and at all times after it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor and Company, or the more part of them present, whereof the said Governor or his Deputy to be one, at any of their General Courts or General Assemblies, to remove and disfranchise him or them, and every such person and persons at their wills and pleasures, and he or they so removed and disfranchised not to be permitted to trade into the countries, territories and limits aforesaid, or any part thereof, nor to have any adventure or stock going or remaining with or amongst the said Company, without the special licence of the said Governor and Company, or the more part of them present at any General Court, first had and obtained in that behalf, any thing before in these presents to the contrary thereof in anywise notwithstanding: AND OUR WILL AND PLEASURE IS, and hereby we do also ordain, that it shall and may be

lawful to and for the said Governor and Company, or the greater part of them, whereof the Governor for the time being or his Deputy to be one, to admit into and to be of the said Company all such servants or factors, of or for the said Company, and all such others as to them or the most part of them present, at any court held for the said Company, the Governor or his deputy being one, shall be thought fit and agreeable with the orders and ordinances made and to be made for the government of the said Company: AND FURTHER, our will and pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, WE DO grant unto the said Governor and Company, and to their successors, that it shall and may be lawful in all elections and bye-laws to be made by the General Court of the Adventurers of the said Company, that every person shall have a number of votes according to his stock, that is to say, for every hundred pounds by him subscribed or brought into the present stock, one vote, and that any of those that have subscribed less than One hundred pounds may join their respective sums to make up One hundred pounds, and have one vote jointly for the same, and not otherwise: AND FURTHER, of our especial grace, certain knowledge and mere motion, WE DO for us, our heirs and successors, grant to and with the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, that all lands, islands, territories, plantations, forts, fortifications, factories or colonies, where the said Company's factories and trade are or shall be, within any the ports or places afore limited, shall be immediately and from henceforth under the power and command of the said Governor and Company, their successors and assigns; SAVING the faith and allegiance due to be performed to us, our heirs and successors aforesaid; and that the said Governor and Company shall have liberty, full power and authority to appoint and establish Governors and all other officers to govern them, and that the Governor and his Council of the several and respective places where the said Company shall have plantations, forts, factories, colonies or places of trade within any the countries, lands or territories hereby granted, may have power to judge all persons belonging to the said Governor and Company, or that shall live under them, in all causes, whether civil or criminal, according to the laws of this kingdom, and to execute justice accordingly; and in case any crime or misdemeanor shall be committed in any of the said Company's plantations, forts, factories or places of trade within the limits aforesaid, where judicature cannot be executed for want of a Governor and Council there, then in such case it shall and may be lawful for the chief Factor of that place and his Council to transmit the party, together with the offence, to such other plantation, factory or fort where there shall be a Governor and Council, where justice may be executed, or into this kingdom of England, as shall be thought most convenient, there to receive such punishment as the nature of his offence shall deserve: AND MOREOVER, our will and pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, WE DO GIVE and grant unto the said Governor and Company, and their successors, free liberty and licence, in case they conceive it necessary, to send either ships of war, men or ammunition, unto any their plantations, forts, factories or places of trade aforesaid, for the security and defence of the same, and to choose commanders and officers over them, and to give them power and authority, by commission under their common seal, or otherwise, to continue or make peace or war with any prince or people whatsoever, that are not Christians, in any

places where the said Company shall have any plantations, forts or factories, or adjacent thereunto, as shall be most for the advantage and benefit of the said Governor and Company, and of their trade; and also to right and recompense themselves upon the goods, estates or people of those parts, by whom the said Governor and Company shall sustain any injury, loss or damage, or upon any other people whatsoever that shall any way, contrary to the intent of these presents, interrupt, wrong or injure them in their said trade, within the said places, territories and limits granted by this Charter: And that it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor and Company, and their successors, from time to time, and at all times from henceforth, to erect and build such castles, fortifications, forts, garrisons, colonies or plantations, towns or villages, in any parts or places within the limits and bounds granted before in these presents unto the said Governor and Company, as they in their discretion shall think fit and requisite, and for the supply of such as shall be needful and convenient, to keep and be in the same, to send out of this kingdom, to the said castles, forts, fortifications, garrisons, colonies, plantations, towns or villages, all kinds of clothing, provision of victuals, ammunition and implements necessary for such purpose, paying the duties and customs for the same, as also to transport and carry over such number of men, being willing thereunto, or not prohibited, as they shall think fit, and also to govern them in such legal and reasonable manner as the said Governor and Company shall think best, and to inflict punishment for misdemeanors, or impose such fines upon them for breach of their orders, as in these presents are formerly expressed: AND FURTHER, our will and pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, we do grant unto the said Governor and Company, and to their successors, full power and lawful authority to seize upon the persons of all such English, or any other our subjects which shall sail into Hudson's Bay, or inhabit in any of the countries, islands or territories hereby granted to the said Governor and Company, without their leave and licence in that behalf first had and obtained, or that shall contemn or disobey their orders, and send them to England; and that all and every person or persons, being our subjects, any ways employed by the said Governor and Company, within any the parts, places and limits aforesaid, shall be liable unto and suffer such punishment for any offences by them committed in the parts aforesaid, as the President and Council for the said Governor and Company there shall think fit, and the merit of the offence shall require, as aforesaid; and in case any person or persons being convicted and sentenced by the President and Council of the said Governor and Company, in the countries, lands or limits aforesaid, their factors or agents there, for any offence by them done, shall appeal from the same, that then and in such case it shall and may be lawful to and for the said President and Council, factors or agents, to seize upon him or them, and to carry him or them home prisoners into England, to the said Governor and Company, there to receive such condign punishment as his cause shall require, and the law of this nation allow of; and for the better discovery of abuses and injuries to be done unto the said Governor and Company, or their successors, by any servant by them to be employed in the said voyages and plantations, it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Governor and Company, and their respective President, Chief Agent or Governor in the parts aforesaid, to examine upon oath all factors, masters, pursers, supercargoes, com-

manders of castles, forts, fortifications, plantations or colonies, or other persons, touching or concerning any matter or thing in which by law or usage an oath may be administered, so as the said oath, and the matter therein contained, be not repugnant, but agreeable to the laws of this realm: AND WE DO hereby straitly charge and command all and singular our Admirals, Vice-Admirals, Justices, Mayors, Sheriffs, Constables, Bailiffs, and all and singular other our officers, ministers, liege men and subjects whatsoever, to be aiding, favouring, helping and assisting to the said Governor and Company, and to their successors, and to their deputies, officers, factors, servants, assigns and ministers, and every of them, in executing and enjoying the premises, as well on land as on sea, from time to time, when any of you shall thereunto be required; ANY STATUTE, act, ordinance, proviso, proclamation or restraint heretofore had, made, set forth, ordained or provided, or any other matter, cause or thing whatsoever to the contrary in anywise notwithstanding. IN WITNESS WHEREOF we have caused these our Letters to be made Patent. WITNESS OURSELF at Westminster, the second day of May in the two-and-twentieth year of our reign.

By Writ of Privy Seal.

FIGOTT.

## B.

CROWN GRANT to the HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY of the exclusive Trade with the Indians in certain parts of North America, for a further term of Twenty-one Years, and upon the surrender of a former Grant.

VICTORIA R.

(L. S.) VICTORIA, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland Queen, Defender of the Faith.

To all to whom these Presents shall come, greeting.

WHEREAS, by an Act passed in the Session of Parliament holden in the first and second year of the reign of his late Majesty King George the Fourth, intituled, "An Act for regulating the Fur Trade, and establishing a Criminal and Civil Jurisdiction within certain parts of North America," it was amongst other things enacted, that from and after the passing of the said Act, it should be lawful for his said Majesty, his heirs or successors, to make Grants, or give his or their Royal Licence, under the hand and seal of one of his or their Principal Secretaries of State, to any body corporate or company, or person or persons, of or for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America as should be specified in any such Grants or Licences, respectively, not being part of the lands and territories theretofore granted to the Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading to Hudson's Bay, and not being part of any of our Provinces in North America, or of any lands or territories belonging to the United States of America, and that all such Grants and Licences should be good, valid and effectual for the purpose of securing to all such bodies corporate, or companies or persons, the sole and exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America (except as hereinafter excepted) as should be specified in such Grants or Licences, any thing contained in any Act or Acts of

L



Parliament, or any law to the contrary notwithstanding; and it was further enacted, that no such Grant or Licence made or given by his said Majesty, his heirs or successors, of any such exclusive privileges of trading with the Indians in such parts of North America as aforesaid, should be made or given for any longer period than 21 years, and no rent should be required or demanded for or in respect of any such Grant or Licence, or any privileges given thereby under the provisions of the said list for the first period of 21 years; and it was further enacted, that from and after the passing of the said Act, the Governor and Company of Adventurers trading to Hudson's Bay, and every body corporate and company and person to whom any such Grant or Licence should be made or given as aforesaid, should respectively keep accurate registers of all persons in their employ in any parts of North America, and should once in each year return to the Principal Secretaries of State accurate duplicates of such registers, and should also enter into such security as should be required for the due execution of all processes criminal and civil, as well within the territories included with any such Grant, as within those granted by Charter to the Governor and Company of Adventures of England trading to Hudson's Bay, and for the producing or delivering into safe custody, for the purpose of trial, all persons in their employ or acting under their authority, who should be charged with any criminal offence, and also for the due and faithful observance of all such rules, regulations and stipulations as should be contained in any such Grant or Licence, either for gradually diminishing and ultimately preventing the sale or distribution of spirituous liquors to the Indians, or for promoting their moral and religious improvement, or for any other object which might be deemed necessary for the remedy or prevention of any other evils which had hitherto been found to exist: And whereas it was in the said Act recited, that by a convention entered into between his said late Majesty and the United States of America, it was stipulated and agreed, that every country on the North-west coasts of America to the westward of the Stony Mountains should be free and open to the citizens and subjects of the two powers for the term of ten years from the date of the signature of that convention; and it was therefore enacted, that nothing in the said Act contained should be deemed or construed to authorize any body corporate, company or person to whom his said Majesty might, under the provisions of the said Act, make or grant or give a Licence of exclusive trade with the Indians in such parts of North America as aforesaid, to claim or exercise any such exclusive trade within the limits specified in the said article, to the prejudice or exclusion of any citizens of the said United States of America who might be engaged in the said trade; with a proviso, that no British subject should trade with the Indians within such limits without such Grant or Licence as was by the said Act required:

And whereas by an instrument under the hand and seal of the Right Honourable Earl Bathurst, then one of his said late Majesty's Secretaries of State, and dated the 6th day of December 1821, after reciting therein, as or to the effect aforesaid, and also reciting that the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading to Hudson's Bay, and certain Associations of persons trading under the name of "The North-west Company of Montreal," had respectively extended the fur trade over many parts of North America which had not been before explored, and that the competition in the said trade had been found, for some years then past, to be productive of great

inconvenience and loss, not only to the said Company and Associations, but to the said trade in general, and also of great injury to the native Indians and of other persons his said Majesty's subjects; and that the said Governor and Company of Adventurers trading to Hudson's Bay; and William M'Gillivray of Montreal, in the Province of Lower Canada, esquire; Simon M'Gillivray, of Suffolk Lane, in the city of London, merchant; and Edward Ellice, of Spring-gardens, in the county of Middlesex, esquire; had represented to his said Majesty that they had entered into an agreement, on the 26th day of March last, for putting an end to the said competition, and carrying on the said trade for 21 years, commencing with the outfit of 1821, and ending with the returns of the outfit of 1841, to be carried on in the name of the said Governor and Company exclusively, and that the said Governor and Company, and William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice had humbly besought his said late Majesty to make a Grant and give his Royal Licence to them jointly of and for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in North America, under the restrictions and upon the terms and conditions specified in the said recited Act: his said late Majesty, being desirous of encouraging the said trade, and remedying the evils which had arisen from the competition which had theretofore existed therein, did give and grant his Royal Licence, under the hand and seal of one of his Principal Secretaries of State, to the said Governor and Company, and William M'Gillivray Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America to the northward and to the westward of the said lands and territories belonging to the United States of America, as should not form part of any of his said Majesty's Provinces in North America, or of any lands and territories belonging to the said United States of America, or to any European government, state or power; and his said late Majesty did also give and grant and secure to the said Governor and Company, and William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, the sole and exclusive privilege, for the full period of 21 years from the date of that Grant, of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America as aforesaid (except as hereinafter excepted), and did thereby declare that no rent should be required or demanded for or in respect of that Grant and Licence, or any privileges given thereby for the said period of 21 years, but that the said Governor and Company of Adventurers trading to Hudson's Bay, and the said William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray, and Edward Ellice, should, during the period of that Grant and Licence, keep accurate registers of all persons in their employ in any parts of North America, and should once in each year return to his said Majesty's Secretary of State accurate duplicates of such registers, and enter into and give security to his said Majesty, his heirs and successors in the penal sum of £5000 for ensuring, as far as in them might lay, or as they could by their authority over the servants and persons in their employ, the due execution of all criminal processes, and of every civil process in any suit where the matter in dispute shall exceed £200, by the officers and persons legally empowered to execute such processes within all the territories included in that Grant, and for the producing or delivering into custody for purposes of trial all persons in their employ or acting under their authority within the said territories, who should be charged with any criminal offence; and his said Majesty did thereby require that the said Governor and

Company, and William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, should, as soon as the same could be conveniently done, make and submit for his said Majesty's consideration and approval, such rules and regulations for the management and carrying on of the said fur trade with the Indians, and the conduct of the persons employed by them therein, as might appear to his said Majesty to be effectual for diminishing or preventing the sale or distribution of spirituous liquors to the Indians, and for promoting their moral and religious improvement; and his said Majesty did thereby declare, that nothing in that Grant contained should be deemed or construed to authorize the said Governor and Company, and William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, or any persons in their employ, to claim or exercise any trade with the Indians on the North-west coast of America to the westward of the Stony Mountains, to the prejudice or exclusion of any citizens of the United States of America who might be engaged in the said trade; and providing also by the now reciting Grant, that no British subjects other than and except the said Governor and Company, and the said William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, and the persons authorized to carry on exclusive trade by them on Grant, should trade with the Indians within such limits during the period of that Grant:

And whereas the said Governor and Company have acquired to themselves all the rights and interests of the said William M'Gillivray, Simon M'Gillivray and Edward Ellice, under the said recited Grant, and the said Governor and Company having humbly besought us to accept a surrender of the said Grant, and in consideration thereof to make a Grant to them, and to give to them our Royal Licence and authority of and for the like exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in North America, for the like period and upon similar terms and conditions to those specified and referred to in the said recited Grant: Now know YE, That in consideration of the surrender made to us of the said recited Grant, and being desirous of *encouraging the said trade, and of preventing as much as possible a recurrence of the evils* mentioned or referred to in the said recited Grant; as also in consideration of the yearly rent hereinafter reserved to us, We do hereby grant and give our Licence, under the hand and seal of one of our Principal Secretaries of State, to the said Governor and Company, and their successors, for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America, to the northward and to the westward of the lands and territories belonging to the United States of America, as shall not form part of any of our provinces in North America, or of any lands or territories belonging to the said United States of America, or to any European government, state or power, but subject nevertheless as hereinafter mentioned: And we do by these presents give, grant and secure to the said Governor and Company, and their successors, the sole and exclusive privilege, for the full period of 21 years from the date of this our Grant, of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America as aforesaid (except as hereinafter mentioned): And we do hereby declare, that no rent shall be required or demanded for or in respect of this our Grant and Licence, or any privileges given thereby, for the first four years of the said term of 21 years; and we do hereby reserve to ourselves, our heirs and successors, for the remainder of the said term of 21 years, the yearly rent or sum of 5s. to be paid by the said Governor and Company, or their successors, on

the first day of June in every year, into our Exchequer, on the account of us, our heirs and successors; and we do hereby declare, that the said Governor and Company, and their successors, shall, during the period of this our Grant and Licence, keep accurate registers of all persons in their employ in any parts of North America, and shall once in each year return to our Secretary of State accurate duplicates of such registers; and shall also enter into and give security to us, our heirs and successors, in the penal sum of £.5000, for ensuring, as far as in them may lie, or as they can by their authority over the servants and persons in their employ, the due execution of all criminal and civil processes by the officers and persons legally empowered to execute such processes within all the territories included in this our Grant, and for the producing or delivering into custody for the purposes of trial all persons in their employ or acting under their authority within the said territories who shall be charged with any criminal offence: And we do also hereby require, that the said Governor and Company, and their successors, shall, as soon as the same can be conveniently done, make and submit for our consideration and approval such rules and regulations for the management and carrying on the said fur trade with the Indians, and the conduct of the persons employed by them therein, as may appear to us to be effectual for diminishing or preventing the sale or distribution of spiritous liquors to the Indians, and for promoting their moral and religious improvement: But we do hereby declare, that nothing in this our Grant contained shall be deemed or construed to authorise the said Governor and Company, or their successors, or any persons in their employ, to claim or exercise any trade with the Indians on the North-west coast of America to the westward of the Stony Mountains, to the prejudice or exclusion of any of the subjects of any foreign states, who, under or by force of any convention for the time being between us and such foreign states respectively, may be entitled to and shall be engaged in the said trade: Provided nevertheless, and we do hereby declare our pleasure to be, that nothing herein contained shall extend or be construed to prevent the establishment by us, our heirs or successors, within the territories aforesaid, or any of them, of any colony or colonies, province or provinces, or for annexing any part of the aforesaid territories to any existing colony or colonies to us, in right of our Imperial Crown, belonging, or for constituting any such form of civil government as to us may seem meet, within any such colony or colonies, province or provinces:

And we do hereby reserve to us, our heirs and successors, full power and authority to revoke these presents, or any part thereof, in so far as the same may embrace or extend to any of the territories aforesaid, which may hereafter be comprised within any colony or colonies, province or provinces as aforesaid:

It being nevertheless hereby declared, that no British subjects other than and except the said Governor and Company, and their successors, and the persons authorized to carry on exclusive trade by them, shall trade with the Indians during the period of this our Grant within the limits aforesaid, or within that part thereof which shall not be comprised within any such colony or province as aforesaid.

Given at our Court at Buckingham Palace, 30th day of May 1838.

By Her Majesty's command.

(L. s.)

(Signed)

GLENELG.

## C.

COPY of the TREATY between Her Majesty and the United States of America, for the Settlement of the Oregon Boundary. Signed at Washington, June 15, 1846. Ratifications exchanged at London, July 17, 1846. Presented to both Houses of Parliament by Command of Her Majesty, 1846.

---

[N.B.—By this treaty it will be seen that the Hudson's Bay Company alone, or those British subjects trading with them, are entitled to navigate the northern branch of the Columbia River to the 49th parallel; that this right is not general to the people of the United Kingdom; and that the privilege thus acquired is in perpetuity, as the Charter of 2 May 1670, under which the Company is constituted "IS FOR EVER."—R. M. MARTIN.]

---

Her Majesty the Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and the United States of America, deeming it to be desirable for the future welfare of both countries, that the state of doubt and uncertainty which has hitherto prevailed respecting the Sovereignty and Government of the Territory on the North-west Coast of America, lying westward of the Rocky or Stony Mountains, should be finally terminated by an amicable compromise of the rights mutually asserted by the two Parties over the said Territory, have respectively named Plenipotentiaries to treat and agree concerning the terms of such settlement, that is to say:—

Her Majesty the Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland has, on Her part, appointed the Right Honourable Richard Pakenham, a Member of Her Majesty's Most Honourable Privy Council, and Her Majesty's Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to the United States; and the President of the United States of America has, on his part, furnished with full powers, James Buchanan, Secretary of State of the United States; who, after having communicated to each other their respective full powers, found in good and due form, have agreed upon and concluded the following Articles:—

## ARTICLE I.

From the point on the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, where the boundary laid down in existing Treaties and Conventions between Great Britain and the United States terminates, the line of boundary between the territories of Her Britannic Majesty and those of the United States shall be continued westward along the said forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, to the middle of the channel which separates the continent from Vancouver's Island; and thence southerly, through the middle of the said channel, and of Fuca's Straits, to the Pacific Ocean: provided, however, that the navigation of the whole of the said channel and straits, south of the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, remain free and open to both Parties.

## ARTICLE II.

From the point at which the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude shall be found to intersect the great northern branch of the Columbia River, the navigation of the said branch shall be free and open to the Hudson's Bay Company, and to all British subjects trading with the same, to the point where the said branch meets the main stream of the Columbia, and thence down the said main stream to the ocean, with free access into and through the said river or rivers; it being understood, that all the usual portages along the line thus described, shall in like manner be free and open.

In navigating the said river or rivers, British subjects, with their goods and produce, shall be treated on the same footing as citizens of the United States; it being, however, always understood, that nothing in this Article shall be construed as preventing, or intended to prevent, the Government of the United States from making any regulations respecting the navigation of the said river or rivers, not inconsistent with the present Treaty.

## ARTICLE III.

In the future appropriation of the territory south of the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, as provided in the First Article of this Treaty, the possessory rights of the Hudson's Bay Company, and of all British subjects who may be already in the occupation of land or other property lawfully acquired within the said territory, shall be respected.

## ARTICLE IV.

The farms, lands, and other property of every description, belonging to the Puget's Sound Agricultural Company, on the north side of the Columbia River, shall be confirmed to the said Company. In case, however, the situation of those farms and lands should be considered by the United States to be of public and political importance, and the United States' Government should signify a desire to obtain possession of the whole or of any part thereof, the property so required shall be transferred to the said Government at a proper valuation, to be agreed upon between the parties.

## ARTICLE V.

The present Treaty shall be ratified by her Britannic Majesty, and by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate thereof; and the ratifications shall be exchanged at London at the expiration of six months from the date hereof, or sooner if possible.

In witness whereof the respective Plenipotentiaries have signed the same, and have affixed thereto the seals of their arms.

Done at Washington, the fifteenth day of June, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and forty-six.

RICHARD PAKINGHAM. (L. S.)  
JAMES BUCHANAN. (L. S.)

## D.

## ROYAL DRAFT CHARTER for the Colonization of Vancouver's Island.

VICTORIA, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, Queen, Defender of the Faith, to all to whom these presents shall come, greeting: Whereas by the Royal Charter or letters patent of his late Majesty King Charles the Second, bearing date the 2nd day of May, in the 22nd year of his reign, his said late Majesty did (amongst other things) ordain and declare that the Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, thereby incorporated, and their successors by that name should at all times thereafter be personable and capable in law to have, purchase, receive, possess, and enjoy and retain lands, rents, privileges, liberties, jurisdictions, franchises and hereditaments, of what nature or kind soever they were, to them or their successors: And also to give, grant, demise, alien, assign and dispose lands, tenements and hereditaments, and to do and execute all and singular other things by the same name that to them should or might appertain to do: And his said late Majesty did thereby for himself, his heirs and successors, give, grant and confirm unto the said Governor and Company and their successors the sole trade and commerce of all those seas, straits, bays, rivers, lakes, creeks and sounds, in whatsoever latitude they should be, that lay within the entrance of the straits commonly called Hudson's Straits, together with all the lands and territories upon the countries, coasts and confines of the seas, bays, lakes, rivers, creeks and sounds aforesaid, that were not already actually possessed by or granted to any of his said late Majesty's subjects, or possessed by the subjects of any other Christian prince or state, with the fishing of all sorts of fish, whales, sturgeons and all other royal fishes in the seas, bays, inlets and rivers within the premises, and the fish therein taken; together with the royalty of the sea upon the coasts within the limits aforesaid, and all mines royal, as well then discovered as not then discovered, of gold, silver, gems and precious stones to be found or discovered within the territories, limits, and places aforesaid, and that the said land should be from thenceforth reckoned and reputed as one of his said late Majesty's plantations or colonies in America: And further, his said late Majesty did thereby for himself, his heirs and successors, make, create, and constitute the said Governor and Company for the time being and their successors the true and absolute lords and proprietors of the same territory, limits and places aforesaid, and of all other the premises (saving always the faith, allegiance, and sovereign dominion due to his said late Majesty, his heirs and successors for the same); to hold, possess and enjoy the said territory, limits, and places, and all and singular other the premises thereby granted as aforesaid, with their and every of their rights, members, jurisdictions prerogatives, royalties, and appurtenances whatsoever to them the said Governor and Company and their successors for ever; to be holden of his said late Majesty, his heirs and successors, as of his manor of East Greenwich, in the county of Kent, in free and common soccage, and not *in capite* or by knights' service; yielding and paying yearly to his said late Majesty, his heirs and successors, for the same, two elks and two black beavers whensoever and as often as his said late Majesty, his heirs and successors, should

happen to enter into the said countries, territories, and regions thereby granted: And whereas by an Act passed in the session of Parliament held in the 43rd year of the reign of his late Majesty King George the Third, intituled, "An Act for extending the Jurisdiction of the Courts of Justice in the Provinces of Lower and Upper Canada, to the Trial and Punishment of Persons guilty of Crimes and Offences within certain Parts of North America adjoining to the said Provinces," it was enacted that from or after the passing of that Act all offences committed within any of the Indian territories or parts of America not within the limits of either of the said provinces of Lower and Upper Canada, or of any Civil Government of the United States of America, should be and be deemed to be offences of the same nature, and should be tried in the same manner and subject to the same punishment as if the same had been committed within the Provinces of Upper or Lower Canada, and provisions were contained in the said Act regulating the committal and trial of the offenders:

And whereas, by an Act passed in the session of Parliament holden in the first and second years of the reign of his late Majesty King George the Fourth, intituled, "An Act for regulating the Fur Trade, and establishing a Criminal and Civil Jurisdiction within certain parts of North America," after reciting, among other things, that doubts had been entertained whether the provisions of said Act of the 43rd George III. extended to the territories granted by Charter to the said Governor and Company, and that it was expedient that such doubts should be removed, and that the said Act should be further extended; it was enacted (among other things), that from and after the passing of said last-mentioned Act, it should be lawful for his then Majesty, his heirs and successors, to make grants or give his Royal licence under the hand and seal of one of his Majesty's Principal Secretaries of State to any body corporate or company, or person or persons of or for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America as should be specified in any of such grants or licences respectively, not being part of the lands or territories theretofore granted to the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, and not being part of any of his Majesty's provinces in North America, or of any lands or territories belonging to the United States of America, subject to the provisions and restrictions in the said Act mentioned: And it was thereby further enacted, that the said Act of the 43rd George III., and all the clauses and provisoes therein contained, should be deemed and construed, and was and were thereby respectively declared to extend to and over, and to be in full force in and through all the territories theretofore granted to the said Company of Adventurers trading to Hudson's Bay: And whereas by our grant or royal licence bearing date the 13th day of May, 1838, under the hand and seal of one of our then Principal Secretaries of State, we granted and gave our licence to the said Governor and Company and their successors for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America to the northward and westward of the lands and territories belonging to the United States of America as should not form part of any of our provinces in North America, or of any lands or territories belonging to the United States of America, or to any European Government, State or Power, subject nevertheless as therein mentioned: And we did thereby give and grant and secure to the said Governor and Company, and their successors, the sole and exclusive privilege



for the full period of twenty-one years from the date thereof, of trading with the Indians in all such parts of North America as aforesaid, except as therein mentioned, at the rent therein reserved, and upon the terms and subject to the qualification and power of revocation therein contained: And whereas by a treaty between ourselves and the United States of America, for the settlement of the Oregon boundary, signed at Washington on the 15th day of June, 1846, it was agreed upon and concluded (amongst other things) as follows: That from the point of the 49th parallel of north latitude, where the boundary laid down in existing treaties and conventions between Great Britain and the said United States, terminated the line of boundary between our territories and those of the said United States, should be continued westward along the said parallel of north latitude to the middle of the channel which separates the Continent from Vancouver's Island, and thence southerly through the middle of the said channel and of De Fuca's Straits to the Pacific Ocean: Provided, however, that the navigation of the whole of the said channel and straits south of the 49th parallel of north latitude should remain free and open to both parties: And whereas certain of our lands and territories in North America lie to the westward and also to the northward of the territory granted to the said Governor and Company by the hereinbefore recited grant or letters patent of his said late Majesty King Charles the Second, and which is, pursuant to the direction in that behalf contained in such grant or letters patent, called or known as Rupert's Land, and to the eastward of the territories the boundary line of which is defined by the hereinbefore recited treaty with the United States of North America: And whereas under the said last-mentioned grant or letters patent, and also under our hereinbefore recited grant or licence of the 13th day of May, 1838, the said Governor and Company have traded as well within as beyond the limits of the lands and territories granted to them by the said grant or letters patent of his said late Majesty King Charles the Second, and have in connection with and for the protection of their trade beyond the said limits, been in the habit of erecting forts and other isolated establishments without the said limits, and some of such forts and establishments of the said Governor and Company are now existing in that part of our said territories in North America, including Vancouver's Island, the boundary line between which and the territories of the said United States is determined by the hereinbefore recited treaty between ourselves and the said United States: *And whereas it would conduce greatly to the maintenance of peace, justice, and good order, and the advancement of colonization and the promotion and encouragement of trade and commerce in, and also to the protection and welfare of the native Indians residing within that portion of our territories in North America called Vancouver's Island, if such Island were colonized by settlers from the British dominions, and if the property in the land of such island were vested for the purpose of such colonization in the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay; but nevertheless, upon condition that the said Governor and Company should form on the said island a settlement or settlements, as hereinafter mentioned, for the purpose of colonizing the said island, and also should defray the entire expense of any civil and military establishments which may be required for the protection and government of such settlement or settlements (except, nevertheless, during the time of hostilities between Great Britain and any foreign*

European or American power): Now know ye, that We, being moved by the reasons before mentioned, do by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, give, grant, and confirm unto the said Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay, and their successors, all that the said island called Vancouver's Island, with the fishing of all sorts of fish in the seas, bays, inlets and rivers within or surrounding the same, together with all royalties of the seas upon the coasts within the limits aforesaid, and all mines royal thereto belonging: AND FURTHER WE DO, by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, make, create, and constitute, the said Governor and Company for the time being, and their successors, the true and absolute lords and proprietors of the same territories, limits and places, and of all other the premises (saving always the faith, allegiance, and sovereign dominion due to us, our heirs and successors for the same), to have, hold, possess and enjoy the said territory, limits, and places, and all and singular other the premises hereby granted as aforesaid, with their and every of their rights, members, royalties, and appurtenances whatsoever to them, the said Governor and Company, and their successors for ever, to be holden of us, our heirs and successors, in free and common soccage, at the yearly rent of 7s., payable to us and our successors for ever, on the 1st day of January in every year: Provided always, and we declare, That this present grant is made to the intent that the said Governor and Company shall establish upon the said island a settlement or settlements of resident colonists, emigrants from our United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, or from other our dominions, and shall dispose of the land there as may be necessary for the purpose of promoting settlements (and for the actual purpose of promoting settlements), and for the actual purposes of colonization, and shall, once in every two years at the least, certify under the seal of the said Governor and Company, to one of our Principal Secretaries of State, what colonists shall have been from time to time settled in the said island, and what land shall have been disposed of as aforesaid: And we further declare, that this present grant is made upon this condition, that if the said Governor and Company shall not, within the term of five years from the date of these presents, have established upon the said island a settlement of resident colonists, emigrants from the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, or from other our dominions, and it shall at any time, after the expiration of such term of five years, be certified to us, our heirs or successors, by any person who shall be appointed by us, our heirs, or successors, to inquire into the condition of such island, that such settlement has not been established according to the intent of this our grant, it shall be lawful for us, our heirs and successors, to revoke this present grant, and to enter upon and resume the said island and premises hereby granted, without prejudice, nevertheless, to such dispositions as may have been made in the mean time by the said Governor and Company of any land in the said island for the actual purposes of colonization and settlement, and as shall have been certified as aforesaid to one of our principal Secretaries of State: And we hereby declare, that this present grant is and shall be deemed and taken to be made upon this further condition, that we, our heirs and successors, shall have, and we accordingly reserve unto us and them, full power, at the expiration of the said Governor and Company's grant or licence of or for the exclusive privilege of trading with the Indians, to repurchase and take of and from the said

Governor and Company the said Vancouver's Island and premises hereby granted, in consideration of payment being made by us, our heirs or successors, to the said Governor and Company of the sum or sums of money theretofore laid out and expended by them in and upon the said island and premises, and of the value of their establishments, property, and effects then being thereon. In witness whereof, we have caused these our letters to be made patent. Witness Ourselves at Westminster the  
 day of                      in the                      year of our reign.

---

[This is the Draft Charter, as laid before Parliament on 10th August, 1848. It provides that a settlement must be established before the lapse of five years, otherwise the present grant will be revoked. It also empowers the Crown, on the expiration of the existing trading licence over certain territories not included in the Charter of 2nd May, 1670, or belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company, namely in 1860—to repurchase Vancouver's Island from the Company. Since this Draft Charter was laid before Parliament, it is understood that several additions have been made to it by Earl Grey and the Privy Council, and concurred in by the Hudson's Bay Company.]

---

#### STATE OF THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT IN JULY AND AUGUST 1848.

*Copy of a Letter from the Rev. WM. COCKRAN, of the Church of England, to BENJAMIN HARRISON, Esq., one of the Directors of the Hudson's Bay Company.*

' PARSONAGE, July 26, 1848.

' MY DEAR SIR,

' I have not had the pleasure of receiving a letter from you since my arrival in Red River last August. I sincerely hope you are enjoying good health, and that it has been your various duties, and not indisposition, which have prevented you writing by the spring express. Judging from your long connection with the Hudson's Bay Company, and the deep interest which you have always taken in promoting the advancement of civilization and Christianity, a letter from me might be acceptable, on this account I take the liberty of intruding on your valuable time. It gives me pleasure to be able to state that the crops of 1847, though scanty, yielded sufficient to afford a limited supply of bread, and, with the prudent management which was exercised, there was seed remaining in the spring to sow fully two-thirds of the

lands under cultivation. The first part of the season was favourable; we had abundance of rain; and during the whole of June, the crops of all kinds looked luxuriant. July commenced with dry, scorching weather, which continued till the 17th of the month. During this period, all the grain sown on the sandy points of the river, was dried at the roots, and the ears strangled in the shot belly. The wheat and barley, also, on the dark soil with clay bottom, began to sicken. Fortunately for us, since the 17th, the weather has changed; many refreshing showers have fallen; these have cooled the air, moistened the earth, and made all the crops on dark soils assume a healthy appearance. Should God mercifully continue the same temperate moist weather for a fortnight, we shall have the prospect of abundance for the ensuing year.

‘ Good health has prevailed throughout the settlement during the whole of the past year. In the Upper District, the deaths have been 14, whereas the births about 60. The attendance at public worship in the Upper Church averages 400, the communicants 150. The whole population conform their external deportment to the word of God. There are no habitual drunkards; no Sabbath-breakers; no profane persons, who take the name of God in vain; no illegitimate children; no turbulent seditious characters; no vagrants who endeavour to sponge a living out of their more industrious brethren: all have such a respect for their characters, as steadily to pursue their duties; and many of them are deeply influenced by the fear and love of God, and are endeavouring, through his grace, to live sober, righteous, and pious lives. On the arrival of the troops, the turbulent disaffected characters saw that they could no longer gain anything by intimidation; they silently settled down, till they found it convenient to sneak across the line, and establish on the American territory. This is a present advantage; but should there be war between the United States and England, they are, of course, ready to re-cross the line to plunder us. Belcour, the Romish priest, has returned, and established himself among them, and he occasionally comes over to the White Horse Plains, and delivers his inflammatory speeches. Last week he facilitated the departure of two British soldiers, who had deserted from the barracks, Upper Fort, by furnishing them with provisions and directing them in the route.

‘ We deeply regret the withdrawing of the 6th Royals; they have been of great service in restoring peace, and they have created a market for country produce, and have encouraged industry. We hope the corps on route may be equally serviceable.

‘ With kind regards and sincere wishes for your health and happiness,

‘ I am, my dear Sir,

‘ Yours truly,

(Signed)

‘ Wm. COCKRAN.

‘ BENJ. HARRISON, Esq., &c. &c.’

*From the Rev. J. MACALLUM, of the Church of England, to BENJAMIN HARRISON, Esq.*

‘ RED RIVER, August 3, 1848.

‘ MY DEAR SIR,

‘ Although I have no letters to acknowledge, and nothing of importance to communicate, yet I cannot permit the express to depart without conveying a few lines to you. Long habit has rendered this not only an agreeable, but a necessary duty, for the mind is never at rest until it is discharged. Besides I know the deep interest you take in the moral and religious condition of the Colony,—I know that every item of intelligence, bearing on this point, is read with satisfaction; and ill it would become me, whom you have so long distinguished with your attention, to omit any opportunity of contributing his little to the information you derive from other sources.

‘ You will be pleased to learn that the past year presents much to excite our gratitude and thankfulness. The law has been respected; the ordinances of religion have been observed; peace has been unbroken; health has been uninterrupted; and notwithstanding the failure of the crops, few have suffered from scarcity of provisions. What in other countries would almost upset the existing order of things, an almost entire failure of the harvest has quite an opposite effect here,—it renders men sober, industrious, careful, docile, and orderly. The plains, you are aware, are always accessible, and the produce of the chase, together with the production of the lakes, if economised, effectually protect from the pressure of scarcity. Some, no doubt, experienced privation, but they are uniformly the thoughtless, the prodigal, the reckless,—men that in Europe would either starve, or fill the gaols. No steady, industrious man, ever wants the means of existence in Red River.

‘ The weather this season has been remarkably propitious. The crops look well; and if it please the Almighty to protect them from mildew and frost, the produce will be much above average. Never, at least never during my residence in the country, was this more to be desired. Few, if any, of the colonists have been able to preserve any seed wheat, so that should our hopes be again disappointed, should a third failure take place, the effects would be felt for years to come.

‘ The schools are likely to remain in the same state as during the preceding year, there being neither increase nor decrease. This, in one respect, is fortunate; in another quite the reverse; for unless young men, when qualified, are admitted into the service, parents will have no inducement to educate their offspring. Here, as everywhere else, men must be actuated by some motive before they incur the expense attendant on education; and the main, if not the only motive, that operates in Rupert’s Land, is admission into the service. Take away this motive—let young men, after a course of education, be permitted to lie on hand, or compelled to handle the oar, and the inevitable consequence will be, the consignment of the rising generation to ignorance and all its evils. I sincerely trust there will be an opening next year for two or three youths, who have now been a considerable time at school, and who, there is every

reason to hope, will duly appreciate any favour conferred upon them. It is true that Isbister's conduct is sufficient, and more than sufficient, to prejudice the minds of their best friends, and to throw many obstacles in the way of their introduction into the service; but it is to be hoped that the ingratitude of one, and that one merely the tool of another unconnected with the service, will not close the only door that has hitherto been open to the youth of Hudson's Bay.

'The young Ladies' School has considerably declined, in consequence, I believe, of a native being governess. Miss M'Kenzie is a highly talented young lady, maintains excellent discipline, and is most successful as a teacher; but no amount of merit can counterbalance the misfortune of her birth. Of course I pay no attention to groundless prejudice. When a young lady is qualified for the situation she holds,—when she bears an unsullied reputation, and efficiently discharges the duties of her office, it matters little to me to what country she belongs: she confers honour upon any.

'There are two Mission Schools in the Upper District, which I superintend. The one contains 75 children, the other about 40; and in both about 150 young people are instructed, on the Lord's Day, in the principles of divine truth. These are our nurseries wherein we rear plants to supply the places of the old, the decayed, and the falling.

'Mr. Cockran's health continues good, but he seems undecided whether he shall permanently remain in this country. Mr. James, I regret to say, is far from being strong; the *heat* of our climate oppresses and enervates him. Should he be under the necessity of returning home, his absence will be a public loss, for he is a truly pious and devoted young man.

'My own health, thank God, is quite re-established, so that I am now as fit for duty as on the day I first planted my foot on American ground. May my future life evince my gratitude to the Giver of every good and perfect gift.

'The Bibles, Testaments, &c., which you kindly sent out, have been of immense service. Some were disposed of at a low price, but the greater number was given away. I forward, in return, an order on the Company for £.5, which you will oblige me by handing over to the "Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge." Should the Society, on your recommendation, be disposed to send us a few more, I shall have much pleasure in giving them circulation, and in forwarding the proceeds.

'Accept my kind thanks for the file of newspapers you send me annually.

'Mrs. M. unites in affectionate regards to you and yours. That the blessings of the Most High may rest upon you, and that you may long be permitted to exercise a salutary influence on the moral and social condition of Rupert's Land, is the earnest desire of,

'My dear Sir,

'Yours most sincerely,

(Signed)

'J. MACALLUM.

'BENJ. HARRISON, Esq.'

**LONDON:**  
**PRINTED BY T. BRETTILL, RUPERT STREET, HAYMARKET.**

## 18

*(Revised and Enlarged,)*

*The work will be issued in successive volumes on the First of every Month, with a Map of each Colony.*

- M



- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| XVI. Bengal, Agra, and the North West Provinces.   | } Asia.   |
| XVII. Bombay and Seinde.   |           |
| XVIII. Madras and the Ultra Gangetic Provinces, Tavoy, and Tenasserim.                       |           |
| XIX. Ceylon.   |           |
| XX. Sincapore, Penang, Malacca, Labuan, and Hong-Kong.                                       |           |
| XXI. Gibraltar, Heligoland.  | } Europe. |
| XXII. Malta and Gozo.  |           |
| XXIII. Ionian Islands; viz.—Corfu, Cephalonia, Ithaca, Zante, Paxo, Cerigo, and Santa Maura. |           |
| XXIV. Imperial Policy and Administrative System of Colonial Government. General Statistics.  |           |

The British Colonial Empire is without a parallel in the history of the world. It includes an area of two million square miles, (irrespective of 3,000,000 square miles in the Hudson's Bay Company's territories), containing some of the richest islands, the most fertile plains, the strongest fortresses, and the finest havens, in every quarter of the globe. It abounds in every product which can minister to comfort and wealth:—sugar, coffee, cocoa, tea, cinnamon, peppers, spices, silk, cotton, indigo, arrack, rum, rice, mahogany, teak, timber, fruits, cautchouc, gums, dyes, and drugs, are the products of our possessions in Asia, the West Indies, and South America;—corn, timber, tar, fish, oil, flax, furs, coal, and iron, of our Northern American Colonies;—wool, tallow, hides, grain, meat, wine, brandy, oil, aloes, hemp, ivory, gold dust, wood, coal, and copper, of our Australian and African territories;—olive oil, currants, wine, and silk, of our European settlements.

In this vast transmarine empire there are more than *one hundred million subjects of the British Crown*, of varied colour, creed, and character,—speaking divers languages,—and under different forms of government, where the distinction of free and bond no longer exists.

To a small and insulated kingdom like England, Colonies are of vital importance; if deprived of them she would be reduced, in territorial extent, to the condition of a fifth rate European power,—her dominion of the seas would pass away,—her most valuable, because most remunerative, maritime commerce would be lost,—a rapidly increasing population, unable to find food or employment within the United Kingdom, would transfer their industry and intelligence to foreign and rival countries,—or they would inevitably cause revolution and ruin at home.

On the prosperity and extension of the British Colonies depend—under Divine Providence—the peace, the progress, and the perpetuity of a wonderful empire; which has its strongholds in every corner of the earth; which possesses naval and military resources unrivalled; which builds its strength, humanly speaking, on freedom—personal, political, religious, and commercial; and which uses its power, wealth, and influence, for the benefit of mankind.

*The following Works by Mr. MARTIN may be had on  
application to the Publishers.*

- I. History of the British Colonies, 5 vols. ; 28 Maps, Charts, &c. 1834.
- II. Marquis Wellesley's Indian Despatches, 5 vols. ; Maps, Plans, &c. 1836.
- III. British Colonial Library, 10 vols. ; Engravings, Maps, &c. 1837.
- IV. Eastern India, 3 vols. ; 200 Drawings, Maps, Plans, &c. 1838.
- V. Statistics of the British Colonies, 1 large vol. ; 3,000,000 Figures. 1839.
- VI. Ireland as it was—is—and ought to be; Tabular Charts, &c. 1833.
- VII. Political, Commercial, and Financial Condition of Anglo-Eastern Empire, 8vo. ; 2 editions. 1832.
- VIII. British Relations with the Chinese Empire, 8vo. 1832.
- IX. Taxation of the British Empire ; with Tabular Views, &c. 1833.
- X. Past and Present State of Tea Trade of England, Europe, and America. 1833.
- XI. Analysis of Parliamentary Evidence on China Trade. 1832.
- XII. Colonial Policy of the British Empire ; Part I, Government. 1837.
- XIII. Marquis Wellesley's Spanish Despatches, 1 vol. 8vo. 1840.
- XIV. Colonial Magazine, 7 vols. 8vo. ; Engravings, Maps, &c. 1840-41-42.
- XV. Ireland before and after the Union ; 3 editions. 1844 and 1848.
- XVI. Analysis of the Bible ; 2 editions, and a Translation into Chinese. 1836 and 1840.  
Evidence before Parliament on English Taxation.  
Examination before Select Committee of House of Commons, on the Commerce of India, the Subsidiary States, &c. 1839-40.  
Poor Laws for Ireland, a Measure of Justice for England. 1833.  
East and West India Sugar Duties Equalization. 1833.  
Monetary System of British India. 1841.  
Analysis of Parliamentary Evidence on Handloom Weavers, by order of the House of Commons. 1834-5.  
Steam Navigation with Australia ; Map and Table. 1847.  
Evidence before Parliament on our Commercial Relations with China, and on the Opening of Japan, &c. 1847.  
East and West India Sugar Trade in relation to Free Trade and Protection. 1848.
- Last Work.* China—Political, Commercial, and Social—2 vols. 8vo. ; Maps, Statistical Charts, &c. Reported to Her Majesty's Government, and dedicated (by permission) to the Queen. 1847.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS ON "CHINA."

"An elaborate and comprehensive work, admirably digested and arranged, and containing ample matter for meditation—whether for the philosopher or the statesman,—the merchant or the student."—*Morning Chronicle*, 23rd July, 1847.

"We have seen nothing equal to this useful and readable work."—*Morning Advertiser*.

"These volumes prove Mr. Martin to be possessed of considerable ability as a statist, and of the most indefatigable and pains-taking industry. The work is a vast mass of information of every kind bearing on the subject."—*Morning Herald*.

"A huge mass of important information in an easily accessible form and compass."—*Daily News*.

"This very able and indispensable work is accompanied by ample statistical returns, and by various kinds of indices, prospective and retrospective, tending to produce the very rare desideratum of a complete idea on the whole state and condition of China. It is the best of Mr. Martin's numerous works.

"Mr. Martin took the bold step of 'conditionally' resigning his Treasurership for the purpose of giving his representations the benefit of personal presence and support. Though unsuccessful, he still maintains his opinion in favour of the position, health, and fertility of Chusan. His exposition of the horrors and enormities of the opium trade is worthy of all praise, for the honest vigour of its appeals."—*Morning Post*.

"Mr. Martin used his opportunity with great diligence to collect information concerning the whole Chinese Empire."—*Economist*.

"An able work from the pen of perhaps our ablest statist. Mr. Martin, who was early convinced of the error this country committed in planting her footsteps on the barren rock of Hong-Kong, when the fruitful island of Chusan was at her disposal, sacrificed his position to urge his views on the Home Government. His style is clear and unembarrassed, if not brilliant."—*Tail's Magazine*.

"One of the most valuable gifts which English literature has of late received."—*Reading Mercury*.

"Mr. Martin hopes for moral results from the investigation which he has pursued with so much diligence; he aims at the establishment of a truly friendly intercourse between the civilization of the West and the East to their mutual advantage. A more laborious work there is not in our language, nor one where so much varied information is to be found."—*Critic*.

"Mr. Martin takes a statesmanlike view of the whole of our affairs in China. From long experience he has gained the power of communicating his ideas, which leaves him without an equal in statistical and commercial matters, no less than in statesmanship."—*Indian News*.

"Worthy of Mr. Martin's high reputation."—*Exeter Flying Post*.

"There is no living writer so capable of doing justice to the vast subject of China as Mr. M. Martin. His official situation, his previous literary training, the character of his mind, which can grasp large facts and complicated statistics with remarkable ease, eminently fit him for the task he has undertaken."—*Gloucester Chronicle*.

"As a statistician, and particularly as an expositor of the rise and progress of the Colonies, Mr. Martin is justly deemed a high authority. His reputation is a guarantee for the usefulness of the present work."—*Douglas Jerrold's Weekly Newspaper*.

"No point is left unsifted, no field untouched, but with his well-known talent in every thing that concerns England, this celebrated writer gives us a work that must adorn the cabinet of the statesman as well as the library of the merchant."—*Bradford Gazette*.

"The writer is not a mere dry detailer of statistics, but places his facts before the reader in the most agreeable form. The book is, from this peculiarity, almost as entertaining as a new novel. Mr. Martin is moved by a spirit of religion and humanity to deal honourably and kindly by the Chinese."—*Gloucester Journal*.

"A truly splendid Magazine of information; an invaluable treasure for the statesman, scholar, merchant, missionary, and philosopher."—*Edinburgh Register*.

"As a writer upon statistical, commercial, and especially Colonial subjects, Mr. Montgomery Martin has achieved, by his ability, industry, and intelligence, a very high reputation. Appointed to a high official situation, for which his talents peculiarly fitted him, in connection with the Government of Hong-Kong, he made a voluntary surrender of his office, in order to place himself in a position to be able to return to this country, and to press personally upon the Home Government the adoption of a line of policy, which he believed to be essential to the maintenance and extension of our commercial relations with the Chinese Empire. The book is extremely valuable and interesting."—*Exeter Western Luminary*, 22nd Dec. 1846.

"Four hundred millions of people yet to be introduced into communication with the rest of mankind! What a prospect for the merchant, the manufacturer, and ship-owner! But there is still a higher and holier prospect. Four hundred millions of active and intelligent human beings have to be brought within the pale of Christianity! Wary stepping too it will require to enable us to succeed in realizing either of these objects. To assist us, an abler man for the task could not be found than the author of the work before us."—*Liverpool Standard*, 22nd Dec. 1846.

"An important *exposé* of the present state of the resources, population, &c., of the whole of China, which must doubtless prove highly satisfactory and important to all parties connected with the history of that yet almost unknown country."—*Sun*, 11th Dec. 1846.

"A work which will be read with great interest; it abounds in materials which illuminate what has hitherto been a dark page in the topography of nations; in reading it we gain an intelligent view into the seeming chaos of that immense social fabric which myriads of human beings have been labouring for innumerable ages to construct, to improve, and to mar, in pertinacious isolation from the common family of nations."—*Journal of Commerce, London*, 19th Dec. 1846.

"The official position of the Author of this work, must have conferred upon him peculiar advantages in obtaining authentic information as far as possible respecting the internal condition of the Chinese Empire. Of these advantages, Mr. Martin appears to have availed himself with his accustomed industry and acumen."—*Edinburgh Evening Post*, 16th Dec. 1846.

JULY, 1845.

PREPARING FOR PUBLICATION,  
BY T. AND W. BOONE, 29, NEW BOND STREET.

---

By Permission

OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF THE ADMIRALTY.

---

NEW LANDS IN AUSTRALIA;  
DISCOVERIES OF THE  
VICTORIA, ADELAIDE, ALBERT, AND FITZROY RIVERS,  
AND  
EXPEDITIONS INTO THE INTERIOR;  
WITH AN ACCOUNT OF THE  
HITHERTO UNKNOWN COASTS  
SURVEYED DURING THE  
VOYAGE OF H.M.S. BEAGLE,  
BETWEEN THE YEARS 1837 AND 1843:  
ALSO,  
A NARRATIVE OF THE VISITS OF H.M.S. BRITOMART,  
COMMANDER OWEN STANLEY, R.N., F.R.S.  
TO THE  
ISLANDS IN THE ARAFURA SEA.  
BY J. LORT STOKES,  
COMMANDER, R.N.

*With Maps, Charts, and numerous Illustrations, 2 vols. 8vo.*

---

THE Beagle sailed from England early in the year 1837, and returned towards the close of 1843. During that period, besides the ordinary incidents of naval adventure, many circumstances of interest marked the progress of her voyage. Unknown shores and untraversed plains upon the north and north-west coasts of Australia have been added to our geographical knowledge. An inroad into the interior, reaching within 500 miles of the very centre of the great Australian Continent, has been accomplished. The rivers Victoria, Adelaide, Albert, and Fitzroy, have been discovered. Great additions have been made to the several departments of Natural History, of which the various specimens will be classified and described by eminent Naturalists. The north-west coast of Australia has been carefully surveyed; and Bass Strait, heretofore so justly dreaded by the Masters of ships, may now be navigated with that safety which ought to distinguish the high road

between England and Sydney. The charts of the passage through Torres Strait, by the inner route, have been improved, and a safe channel discovered through Endeavour Strait: while anchorages—especially at Western and Southern Australia—now correctly laid down, and doubtful positions finally assigned, prove that in the unpretending though important duties of surveying, the officers of the Expedition failed not to do justice to the cause wherein they were engaged.

Notices of Tenerife, San Salvador, the Brazils, the Cape of Good Hope, the Mauritius, its Hurricanes, and the numerous Islands, Waters, and Lands of Australia, now first discovered and described, will be found in the earlier portions of the work, and an account of the interesting visits of H.M.S. *Britomart*, to the islands in the Arafura Sea, prepared by Captain Owen Stanley, in the latter part.

In an age fertile beyond all precedent in contributions to the stores of geographical knowledge, it seems desirable that some authentic account should be prepared to record the details of a Voyage of Discovery and Survey, performed under the protection of the flag of Great Britain.

For a period of nearly three hundred years England has been pre-eminent for the grandeur and success of her naval discoveries; and a long line of illustrious examples, in which the names of Cabot, Drake, Raleigh, Dampier, Anson, Cook, Byron, Vancouver, Flinders, Parry, Franklin, and others, are to be found, attest that in each succeeding generation there have arisen men, willing, at all hazards, to sustain the reputation of that noble service from which they derived, and to which they bequeathed, and owe their glory!

And though the present cannot emulate the great achievements of the past—though the adventurous wanderer may no longer hope to give his name to a new continent, or pass through unknown seas, from shore to shore—though not for him are reserved the striking triumphs of an earlier time—there are still rich prizes within his reach to tempt him onward!

In the voyage which this work is intended to describe, much new and valuable information has been collected, new coasts have been visited—new scenes described—new countries explored. Fruitful in incident, it abounds in materials for thought. Amid the wilds of Australia the advancing footsteps of Christian civilization have marked the outlines of that wider and more beaten road, by which their further progress, and final triumph will be effected; while in the lonely solitudes, which the occasional visit of the roving savage serves but to make more desolate,—the first echoes of our language,—the first offerings of our faith,—have attested that the dawn is at hand—that the day is coming which shall give another, and an English empire, to the annals of the world!

Each circumstance of that eventful history ought, as it transpires, to be recorded, and an account will be here attempted of that Expedition which penetrated so far towards the interior of this great Continent, discovering some of the largest rivers yet known to water its far-spread forests and extensive plains; in the belief that the intrinsic importance of the subject will more than atone for any want of experience in the art of narration.

LIBRARY OF  
**AUSTRALIAN TRAVELS &c.**

PUBLISHED BY T. AND W. BOONE,  
29, NEW BOND STREET.

---

In 2 vols. 8vo. with Maps and numerous Plates,  
**JOURNALS OF EXPEDITIONS OF DISCOVERY**

INTO  
**CENTRAL AUSTRALIA,**

AND  
OVERLAND FROM ADELAIDE TO KING GEORGE'S SOUND  
IN THE YEARS 1840-1;

*Sent by the Colonists of South Australia,*

WITH THE SANCTION AND SUPPORT OF THE GOVERNMENT:

INCLUDING

**An Account of the Manners and Customs of the Aborigines, and the state  
of their relations with Europeans.**

BY EDWARD JOHN EYRE,

RESIDENT MAGISTRATE, MURRAY RIVER, NOW LIEUT.-GOVERNOR OF NEW ZEALAND.

---

\* \* *The Founder's Medal of the Royal Geographical Society was awarded to Mr. Eyre for the discovery of Lake Torrens, and explorations of far greater extent in Australia than any other traveller, a large portion never having been previously traversed by civilized man.*

---

"His narrative of what he did and overcame, is more like the stirring stories of Park and Bruce than the tame and bookish diffuseness of modern travellers. Nothing short of a perusal of the volumes can enable our readers to appreciate this book."—*Spectator*.

"We might easily extract much more from Mr. Eyre's volumes of interest to the reader, but our limits circumscribe us. We therefore bid farewell to them, with the recommendation to the public, not to overlook a work which, though it records the failure of a great enterprize, is yet full of matter, which proclaims it of value." *Atlas*.

"Mr. Eyre writes with the plain unaffected earnestness of the best of the old travellers."—*Examiner*.

"An intensely interesting book."—*Tablet*.

"We must now close these interesting volumes, not, however, without expressing our high approval both of the matter they contain, and of the manner of their compilation. We rise from the perusal of them with a feeling similar to that which follows the enjoyment of a pleasant work of fiction."—*Critic*.

JOURNALS OF EXPEDITIONS OF DISCOVERY  
IN  
**NORTH-WEST AND WESTERN AUSTRALIA,**  
DURING THE YEARS 1837, 1838, AND 1839,  
Under the Authority of her Majesty's Government.

With Observations on the Agricultural and Commercial Capabilities and Prospects  
of several newly-explored fertile Regions, including

**AUSTRALIND,**

and on the Moral and Physical Condition of the Aboriginal Inhabitants, &c. &c.

BY GEORGE GREY, ESQ., LATE CAPTAIN 83RD REGT.  
FORMERLY GOVERNOR OF SOUTH AUSTRALIA, NOW GOVERNOR OF NEW ZEALAND.

With Two large Maps by J. Arrowsmith, and numerous Illustrations,  
some coloured, in 2 vols. 8vo.

"It is not with the slightest hope of satisfying curiosity, or to anticipate the interest which the public in general, and geographers especially, always feel in enterprises of this nature, but merely to give such a sketch of the principal features of the expedition as may serve to direct those who are desirous of obtaining information respecting a portion of this remarkable country—hitherto only visited by Tasman, Dampier, Baudin, and King, and never before, we believe, penetrated by an European—to look forward to the detailed journals of the spirited officers who had the conduct of the expedition."

*From Geographical Transactions.*

A great portion of the country described in this Journal has never before been visited by any European. The Eastern coast of Short's Bay was for the first time seen and explored during the progress of these expeditions.

"We have rarely seen a more interesting book; it is full of splendid description and startling personal adventure; written in a plain, manly, unaffected style."—*Examiner.*

"It is impossible to have perused these highly interesting and important volumes without being inspired with feelings of warm admiration for the indomitable perseverance and heroic self-devotion of their gallant and enterprising author. Setting aside the vastly important results of Captain Grey's several expeditions, it is hardly possible to conceive narratives of more stirring interest than those of which his volumes are for the most part composed."—*United Service Gazette.*

"We have not read such a work of Travels for many years; it unites the interest of a romance with the permanent qualities of an historical and scientific treatise."—*Atlas.*

"We recommend our readers to the volumes of Captain Grey, assuring them they will derive both amusement and instruction from the perusal."—*Times.*

"This is a work deserving high praise. As a book of Travels it is one of the most interesting we remember to have met with."—*Westminster Review.*

"A book which should be in every lending library and book-club."

*Englishman's Magazine.*

"The contents of these interesting volumes will richly repay an attentive perusal."

*Emigration Gazette.*

"These narratives are replete with interest, and blend information and amusement in a very happy manner."—*Australian Magazine.*

Just published, in 1 vol. 8vo. with Plates and Woodcuts,

**JOURNAL**  
OF AN  
**OVERLAND EXPEDITION IN AUSTRALIA,**  
FROM  
**MORETON BAY TO PORT ESSINGTON,**  
*A distance of upwards of 8000 miles.*  
BY DR. LUDWIG LEICHHARDT.

N.B. A large 3 sheet Map of the Route by J. Arrowsmith is published, and to be had separately in a Case, price 9s.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A work of unquestionable merit and utility, and its author's name will justly stand high upon the honourable list of able and enterprising men, whose courage, perseverance, and literary abilities have contributed so largely to our knowledge of the geography and productions of our distant southern colonies."—*Blackwood's Mag.*

"For the courage with which this lengthened and perilous journey was undertaken, the skill with which it was directed, and the perseverance with which it was performed, it is almost unrivalled in the annals of exploring enterprise. It richly deserves attention."—*Britannia.*

"The narrative in which he relates the results of this remarkable journey, and the extraordinary fatigues and privations endured by himself and his fellow travellers, is not merely valuable for its facts, but full of absorbing interest as a journal of perilous adventures."—*Atlas.*

"The volume before us comprises the narrative of one of the most remarkable enterprises ever planned by man's sagacity and executed by man's courage and endurance. To our minds there is in every point of view an inexpressible charm in such a book as this. It not merely narrates to us the opening of a new material world for human enterprise and scientific investigation, but it makes more clearly known to us the wondrous powers and capacities of human nature. We recommend it to our readers as a work scarcely less remarkable for the extraordinary enterprise recorded in it, than for the simplicity and modesty with which it is related."—*Morning Herald.*

"The result of his enterprise was thoroughly successful. It has added not a little to our existing stock of knowledge in the various departments of natural history, and has made discovery in districts before untrodden, of an almost boundless extent of fertile country."—*Examiner.*

"The most striking feature in the expedition is its successful accomplishment, which is of itself sufficient to place Dr. L. in the first rank of travellers. How much Dr. L. has added to geographical discovery can only be felt by an examination of the admirable maps which accompany the volume. These have been deduced on a large scale from the traveller's sketches by Mr. Arrowsmith, and engraved with a distinctness of execution, and a brief fulness of descriptive remark which leave nothing to be desired."

*Spectator.*



*Published by T. & W. BOONE, 29, New Bond Street.*

*Lately published, in 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, with 8 Maps and Charts, and 57 Illustrations.*

BY COMMAND OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF THE ADMIRALTY.

**DISCOVERIES IN AUSTRALIA;**  
OF THE  
VICTORIA, ADELAIDE, ALBERT, AND FITZROY RIVERS,  
AND EXPEDITIONS INTO THE INTERIOR;  
DURING THE  
VOYAGE OF H.M.S. BEAGLE,  
BETWEEN THE YEARS 1837 AND 1843: ALSO  
A NARRATIVE OF THE VISITS OF H.M.S. BRITOMART,  
COMMANDER OWEN STANLEY, R.N., F.R.S.  
TO THE ISLANDS IN THE ARAFURA SEA.  
BY CAPT. J. LORT STOKES, R.N.

"The whole narrative is so captivating, that we expect to find the work as much in demand at circulating libraries as at institutions of graver pretensions."—*Colon. Gaz.*

"We have to thank Capt. Stokes for a most valuable work, one that will place his name by the side of Vancouver, Tasman, Dampier, and Cook."—*New Quar. Review.*

"The science of Navigation owes a deep debt to Captain Stokes. The information contained in the present volumes must render them an invaluable companion to any ship performing a voyage to that part of the world."—*Foreign Quarterly Review.*

"Every part of it is full of matter, both for the general and scientific reader. With the acts of throwing the lead, taking angles, &c. lively anecdotes and pleasing ideas are constantly associated, so that we very much doubt whether any reader will lay aside the book, large as it is, without regret. In some parts you have all the breathless excitement of a voyage of discovery, and sail up new rivers, and explore new lands, while elsewhere your thoughts are directed to the tracks of commerce and political speculation. Altogether the work is a charming specimen of nautical literature, written in a pure, flexible, terse, and elegant style, and bespeaks everywhere in the author a mind endued with very high moral and intellectual qualities."—*Fraser's Mag.*

"While these volumes must prove of great value to the maritime profession, to the geographer, and to emigrants, they cannot fail to be perused with interest by readers in general."—*Athenæum.*

"We cannot, in noticing these two ably written and interesting volumes, insist too strongly upon their importance alike to the mariner, the geographer, and the general reader. The author is a man of considerable merit, a shrewd observer of men and things, and who was fitted by nature and inclination to conduct these researches into the vast unknown continent whither he proceeded with enterprise and spirit. These volumes contain a fund of interesting matter, and we warmly recommend this valuable addition to our literary and scientific stores to the attention of the public."—*Sentinel.*

"The contents of these volumes, rich, varied and full of interest, will be their best recommendation. For scientific accuracy, they will be highly valued by the geographer and navigator, while they will be read for mere amusement by the public at large."—*Sunday Times.*

THE EASTERN ARCHIPELAGO.

*By Permission of the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty.*

Now ready, in 2 vols. 8vo. with numerous Maps, Plates, and Woodcuts,

**NARRATIVE**

OF THE

**SURVEYING VOYAGE OF H.M.S. FLY,**

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

**CAPTAIN BLACKWOOD, R.N.**

**IN TORRES STRAIT, NEW GUINEA, AND OTHER ISLANDS**

**IN THE EASTERN ARCHIPELAGO ;**

TOGETHER

**WITH AN EXCURSION INTO THE INTERIOR**

OF THE

**EASTERN PART OF THE ISLAND OF JAVA,**

**DURING THE YEARS 1842 TO 1846.**

**BY J. BEETE JUKES, M. A.**

**NATURALIST TO THE EXPEDITION.**

**OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.**

"We must congratulate Mr. Jukes on the value of his publication. Scientific without being abstruse, and picturesque without being extravagant, he has made his volumes a striking and graceful addition to our knowledge of countries highly interesting in themselves, and assuming hourly importance in the eyes of the people of England."—*Blackwood's Magazine*.

"To transcribe the title-page of this book is sufficient to attract public curiosity towards it—to peruse the book itself is to be rewarded with the knowledge of a mass of information in which complete confidence can be reposed, for, from the first page to the last, it is apparent that the main object with Mr. Jukes is to tell all that he knows and believes to be true, rather than to win favour from his readers by his manner of telling it. There is not a pretty phrase, an exaggeration, nor an invention in the two volumes of Mr. Jukes ; all is plain unadorned fact, and because it is so, is deserving, not merely of perusal, but of study. Such are the recommendations of Mr. Jukes' pages to the public, and all who desire to see truth united with novelty will peruse them."—*Morning Herald*.

"Mr. Jukes has been most judicious in his selection of topics whereon to dwell in his narrative, and he describes with great vivacity and picturesque power. There is much novelty and freshness in his book, and much valuable information."

*Daily News.*

"There are very few pages in the work which are not readable and entertaining."

*Morning Post.*

"Captain Blackwood having waived his right of authorship, the narrative of the voyage has been undertaken by Mr. Jukes, favourably known by an agreeable and informing book on Newfoundland, nor will the present work detract from his reputation. The narrative is well planned, pleasantly written, and full of matter."

*Spectator.*

"A great deal was seen, and Geography, Topography, Geology, Natural History, Ethnology, Philology, and Commerce may all be benefited by the work before us."

*Literary Gazette.*

"Mr. Jukes has performed his portion of the work with great ability, sparing no pains in the working up of his abundant material, so as to make it a book of science, as well as a book of amusement."—*Critic*.

"Although a professed man of science, he has described what he saw in a lucid and untechnical manner, so that his work will be found interesting to the ordinary reader, while it is equally valuable to the scientific. The amount of information conveyed is very great."—*Midland Herald*.

In 1 vol. 8vo. Map and Plates, cloth, price 12s.

## A U S T R A L I A,

FROM PORT MACQUARIE TO MORETON BAY,

WITH

*Descriptions of the Natives, their Manners and Customs, the Geology,  
Natural Productions, Fertility, and Resources of that Region.*

First explored and surveyed by order of the Colonial Government.

BY CLEMENT HODGKINSON.

"The work before our consideration contains certain details connected with the portion of Australia, described in it, which will prove of first-rate importance to the colonist and emigrant, since they are evidently derived from practical experience. Throughout this unpretending little work we trace great honesty of purpose, and a disposition to state no more than the bare facts as they presented themselves."

*New Quarterly Review.*

"There is much useful and interesting matter in this volume, and we welcome it as one of the many well-written works upon the natural resources of those countries which every day become more important."—*Atlas.*

"This is a most agreeable, entertaining, and at the same time most useful book. To those thinking of emigrating to Australia, we should say, that its perusal is indispensable."—*News of the World.*

"To all who feel an interest in the Australian colonies, it must be both interesting and important, and to such we recommend its perusal."—*General Advertiser.*

"This is an opportune book, written, too, with an honest purpose, to inform and instruct the home public about a portion of the vast continent of Australia, of which little was heretofore known, and that little too generally unappreciated. A residence of five years in New South Wales, during which Mr. H. was engaged either in surveying for the Government, or in farming pursuits, invests the work with a semi-official character, which adds weight and influence to his opinions, and stamps it with a greater degree of authority. We have been much pleased with this work, and have read it through with great interest."—*Simmonds' Colonial Mag.*

"The result of his labours in surveying this eastern section of Australia, is a vast accession to our previous knowledge of the natural history of that region, and we do not hesitate to place it on our shelves as the very best book of reference on the district it describes."—*Fisher's Colonial Mag.*

"It is given in the form of a journal, abounding in interesting narrative of the state and resources of the country, its natural productions, and the extraordinary character of the people by whom it is inhabited. It is not only a valuable contribution to our stock of Australian history and research, but possesses the charm of personal adventure and novelty to interest the general reader."—*Nautical Mag.*

In 1 vol. 8vo. cloth, with large Map by Arrowsmith, and numerous Illustrations,

**SOUTH AUSTRALIA AND ITS MINES,**

*With an Historical Sketch of the Colony, under its several Administrations, to the Period of Captain Grey's Departure.*

BY FRANCIS DUTTON.

"The best work which has yet issued from the press, descriptive of the resources and management of this thriving colony."—*Mining Journal*.

"We have here a well-timed book. South Australia and its Mines are now objects of great interest; and Mr. Dutton's plain, unadorned recital, contains just what the intending emigrant, or the mercantile inquirer, will rejoice at having placed within his reach."—*Colonial Gazette*.

**COLONIZATION;  
PARTICULARLY IN SOUTHERN AUSTRALIA,**

WITH SOME REMARKS ON SMALL FARMS AND OVER POPULATION.

BY MAJOR-GENERAL SIR CHARLES JAMES NAPIER, K.C.B.

Author of "The Colonies; particularly the Ionian Islands"

In 1 vol. 8vo. price 7s. boards.

"We earnestly recommend the book to all who feel an interest in the welfare of the people."—*Sun*.

In 1 vol. post 8vo. price 5s. 6d.

**HINTS FOR AUSTRALIAN EMIGRANTS,**

WITH

ENGRAVINGS AND EXPLANATORY DESCRIPTIONS  
OF THE WATER RAISING WHEELS,

AND MODES OF IRRIGATING LAND IN SYRIA, EGYPT, SOUTH AMERICA, ETC.

BY PETER CUNNINGHAM,

SURGEON, R.N.

Author of "Two Years in New South Wales," &c.

"The mere name of Mr. Cunningham affords an ample guarantee for the value of any work to which it may be prefixed; and, "to all whom it may concern," we can confidently recommend this remarkably neat little volume as replete with practical information. Its numerous illustrative engravings in wood are executed in a very superior style."—*Naval and Military Gazette*, October 23rd, 1841.

*In 18mo.—Price Two Shillings.*

# A VOCABULARY OF THE DIALECTS OF SOUTH-WESTERN AUSTRALIA.

By CAPTAIN G. GREY, 83RD REGIMENT,  
GOVERNOR OF SOUTH AUSTRALIA.

"The talented little work of Captain Grey, which is modestly put forth as a Vocabulary, rather deserves to be called a Grammar of the Aborigines' language. Captain Grey has evidently studied the dialects of the tribes of Western Australia with great attention to have produced this work, inasmuch as throughout the whole of Australia it is well known that no dialect spoken by any one tribe, can be considered a specimen of the general tongue; the difficulty, therefore, of putting together a vocabulary of an entire dialect wherewith to base all others upon, must have engaged great energy and perseverance. So interesting is the introduction, that we purpose to quote very largely from Captain Grey's observations, and conclude with a few specimens of the words, of which there are upwards of two thousand in this interesting little Work."

*Australian Record, January 23rd, 1841.*

In One Volume, 8vo.

*With Large Map by Arrowsmith, and numerous Plates,*

PRICE 14s.

## NEW ZEALAND, ITS ADVANTAGES AND PROSPECTS AS A BRITISH COLONY,

WITH A FULL ACCOUNT OF THE  
LAND CLAIMS, SALES OF CROWN LANDS, ABORIGINES, ETC.

By CHARLES TERRY, Esq. F.R.S., F.S.A.

"This work is unquestionably a valuable addition to our stock of information respecting New Zealand. It is the work of a perceptive witness, and one moreover who possesses qualifications for the task he has undertaken. We earnestly recommend it to our readers, and have no doubt the book will take its place in all New Zealand collections."—*New Zealand Journal*.

"No person should think of emigrating to that colony for the future until he has carefully perused this intelligent and highly interesting volume."—*U. S. Gazette*.

"We are disposed to regard this as the very best book upon New Zealand that has as yet been published."—*Old Monthly Mag.*

"While emigration to New Zealand was all the rage, we looked in vain for such a work; it is honest and very cleverly written."—*British Queen*.

"A sensible, temperate, and carefully written book."—*Examiner*.

"This is the most practical work that has yet been published on New Zealand; it deals largely with facts, and contains an authentic and complete view of the situation of the colony up to the present time. It is only common justice to his talents and integrity to add, that of all writers capable of giving so much information respecting an infant colony, and giving it with so much exactitude and comprehensiveness, Mr. Terry is, beyond all comparison, the most strictly impartial we are acquainted with."

*Atlas.*

PUBLISHED BY T. & W. BOONE,

29, NEW BOND STREET.

**MAJOR-GENERAL W. F. P. NAPIER'S**  
**HISTORY OF THE WAR IN THE PENINSULA**  
**AND THE SOUTH OF FRANCE.**

NOW COMPLETE, IN

6 vols. 8vo. containing 4104 pages, and 55 Plans, price £6.

The Volumes sold separately, price 20s. each.

**"THE FAITHFUL, IMPARTIAL, AND ELOQUENT HISTORIAN."**

*Sir Robert Peel's Speech.*

*"The great work of General Napier does undoubtedly record it, (national tribute to those engaged in the Peninsular War) and will continue to do so as long as the English language shall last."—Times.*

ALSO, BY MAJOR-GENERAL NAPIER.

A REPLY TO LORD STRANGFORD'S "OBSERVATIONS" on some passages in Colonel NAPIER'S History of the War in the Peninsula. Second Edition, 8vo. price 1s.

A REPLY TO VARIOUS OPPONENTS, particularly to "Strictures on Colonel Napier's History of the War in the Peninsula," together with Observations illustrating Sir John Moore's Campaign. 8vo. price 2s.

MAJOR-GENERAL NAPIER'S JUSTIFICATION OF HIS THIRD VOLUME, forming a Sequel to his Reply to various Opponents, and containing some new and curious facts relative to the BATTLE OF ALBUERRA. 8vo. price 1s. 6d.

A LETTER TO GENERAL LORD VISCOUNT BERESFORD, being an Answer to his Lordship's assumed Refutation of Colonel Napier's Justification of his Third Volume. 8vo. price 1s. 6d.

COUNTER-REMARKS TO MR. DUDLEY MONTAGU PERCEVAL'S REMARKS upon some Passages in Colonel Napier's Fourth Volume of his History of the Peninsular War. In 8vo. price 1s. 6d.

*The above Pamphlets are required to complete the early Editions.*

Second Edition, complete in 1 vol. 8vo. with Plans,

**THE CONQUEST OF SCINDE,**

WITH AN ACCOUNT OF THE MILITARY TRANSACTIONS AND BATTLES OF

Major-General Sir Charles J. Napier in that Country.

BY MAJOR-GENERAL W. F. P. NAPIER,

*Author of "History of the War in the Peninsula."*

"As a commentary upon some remarkable political events, and daring military achievements, this volume will rapidly find a place in every soldier's library."—*Atlas*.

"The Author is the historian of the Peninsular War, whose connection by blood with the gallant conqueror of Scinde affords a security for the authenticity of his sources of information—some of which are the letters of Sir Charles himself—and whose high character, as an author, as well as a soldier, is a guarantee for his fidelity in the use of his ample materials. We may add to the Author's other qualifications, an unflinching intrepid honesty, which makes him speak out, and utter the plain truth without considering whether it be unpalatable."—*Asiatic Journal*.

Royal Quarto, on Indian Paper, price 1s. 6d.

## PORTRAIT OF MAJOR-GENERAL SIR CHARLES JAMES NAPIER, CONQUEROR OF SCINDE.

FROM A SKETCH BY MAJOR-GENERAL W. F. P. NAPIER.

"I must say that, after giving the fullest consideration to those operations, that I have never known an instance of a general officer who has shewn to a higher degree than he has done all the requisite qualifications to enable him to conduct great operations. He has manifested the utmost discretion and prudence in the formation of his plans, the utmost activity in perfecting his preparations to ensure success; and finally the utmost zeal, gallantry, and science, in carrying those plans and preparations into execution. I must say that the march of General Napier against Emaum Ghur was one of the most extraordinary marches I ever read of; and it was, I must say, most completely successful. He marched the army through the desert, with all the heavy guns, transporting all his materiel as well, and by this extraordinary march he deprived the enemy of all means of retreat."—*Speech of the Duke of Wellington.*

"The taking of the fort of Emaum Ghur, was one of the most brilliant affairs ever undertaken and executed."—*Speech of the Earl of Ripon.*

"To the example which he set the troops—inspiring an unparalleled confidence in their commander,—we must mainly attribute the success of the actions of Meeanee and Hyderabad."—*Speech of Sir Robert Peel.*

In one volume 8vo. price 7s. boards,

## REMARKS ON MILITARY LAW AND THE PUNISHMENT OF FLOGGING.

BY MAJOR-GENERAL SIR CHARLES JAMES NAPIER, K.C.B.

"This work, we have several times taken occasion to remark, is far less known than it deserves to be, especially among the profession. It abounds in lessons of profound wisdom, delivered in the clearest language, and it is as modestly as it is ably written; nor have we often met with a more amusing book. There are to be found in it many interesting and characteristic anecdotes, and there is a vein of quiet humour that is very diverting, but which interferes not at all with the serious purpose of the author, who has left upon every page traces of a benevolent heart and sound intellect."—*Naval and Military Gazette.*

In a Box, price 10s. 6d.

## MILITARY FIGURES

FOR THE

PRACTICE AND EXPLANATION

OF THE

"EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF THE ARMY,"

*According to Her Majesty's Regulations;*

Arranged for the Company, Battalion, and Light Infantry,

BY MAJOR HOSKINS, K.H.,

"Major Hopkins, of the old 43rd, in which corps he served with distinction, has invented a set of Military Figures, arranged for the illustration and practice of the evolutions of the Infantry, according to Her Majesty's regulations, and exceedingly well calculated to effect their object. Being adapted to the movements either of the Battalion, Company, or Light Infantry, these Figures, which are accompanied by an Explanatory Pamphlet, and are very properly dedicated to Lord Fitzroy Somerset, will be very useful to young officers of the Infantry."—*United Service Journal.*

The THIRD EDITION, in one vol. post 8vo. price 10s. 6d. bds. of

# ADVENTURES IN THE RIFLE BRIGADE,

IN THE

## PENINSULA, FRANCE, AND THE NETHERLANDS,

FROM THE YEAR 1809 TO 1815,

BY CAPTAIN JOHN KINCAID, FIRST BATTALION.

"An admirable little book."—*Quarterly Review*.

"To those who are unacquainted with John Kincaid of the Rifles,—and few, we throw, of the old Peninsula bands are in this ignorant predicament, and to those who know him, we equally recommend the perusal of his book: it is a fac-simile of the man—a perfect reflection of his image, *veluti in speculo*. A capital Soldier, a pithy and graphic narrator, and a fellow of infinite jest. Captain Kincaid has given us, in this modest volume, the impress of his qualities, the *beau ideal* of a thorough-going Soldier of Service, and the faithful and witty history of some six years' honest and triumphant fighting.

"There is nothing extant in a Soldier's Journal, which, with so little pretension, paints with such truth and raciness the 'domestic economy' of campaigning, and the down-right business of handling the enemy.

"But we cannot follow further;—recommending every one of our readers to pursue the Author himself to his crowning scene of Waterloo, where they will find him as quaint and original as at his *début*. We assure them, it is not possible, by isolated extracts, to give a suitable impression of the spirit and originality which never flag from beginning to end of Captain Kincaid's volume; in every page of which he throws out flashes of native humour, a tithe of which would make the fortune of a Grub-street Bookmaker."—*United Service Journal*.

"His book has one fault, the rarest fault in books, it is too short."

*Monthly Magazine, April.*

Also, by the same Author, Second Edition, in one vol. post 8vo. price 10s. 6d.

# RANDOM SHOTS FROM A RIFLEMAN.

"It is one of the most pithy, witty, soldier-like, and pleasant books in existence."

*United Service Journal.*

"The present volume is to the full as pleasant, and what is still more strange, as original as the last. Criticism would become a sinecure if many such volumes were written: all left for us is to admire and recommend."—*New Monthly Magazine*.

"The present volume is likely to add to his reputation. It is a useful Appendix to the larger works of Napier and other military commentators. It is never dull, tedious, technical, or intricate."—*Times*.

"Those who have read Captain Kincaid's *Adventures in the Rifle Brigade* will seize this volume with avidity, and having dashed through it, will lay it down with only one feeling of regret—that it is not longer."—*News*.

Elegantly bound in the Uniform of the Regiment, 1 vol. post 8vo. price 10s. 6d.

THE

## ADVENTURES OF CAPTAIN JOHN PATTERSON,

With Notices of the Officers, &c. of the 50th, or Queen's Own Regiment,

FROM 180 TO 1821.

DEDICATED BY PERMISSION TO QUEEN ADELAIDE.

"This volume contains a well-written, yet unvarnished narrative, of the adventures of the 50th foot, (better known as the 'Dirty Half-hundred,' from their black facings), during the Peninsular war. It argues well for the bravery, as well as modesty, of Captain Patterson, that throughout his work we have but little of himself, and much of his brother officers."—*Bell's Messenger*.

"Captain Patterson's *Adventures* are the record of a brave soldier—of a dashing, high-minded British officer, who never fears a rival, and never knew what it was to have an enemy, or to hate any man. His descriptions are remarkable for their vividness and accuracy, and his anecdotes will bear repetition once a week for life."—*Sun*.

"Captain Patterson is one of the pleasantest of the numerous tribe of gallant officers who has done so much credit to the British name, by fighting and writing with equal spirit."—*Constitutional*.



In 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, price 24s.

## HISTORICAL RECORD

OF THE

## ROYAL MARINE FORCES,

*From their Formation to the Present Time,*

INCLUDING

AN ACCOUNT OF THEIR SERVICES IN CHINA,

BY P. H. NICOLAS,

LIEUT. ROYAL MARINES.

"Mr. Nicolas has had a wide and fertile field to work upon, and excellently has he turned his materials to account. Impelled by a sincere attachment for his old comrades, by an ardent desire for their welfare, by the very natural wish for a more minute and connected narrative of their daring career than has hitherto been given to the world, he has produced a luminous and comprehensive work, than which none can be better of its class, and which reflects equal credit upon his feelings as an officer, and his talents as a writer."—*United Service Gazette*.

"These volumes cannot fail to prove eminently acceptable to the members of the gallant corps, whose honours they record, and generally indeed to the military service of both arms."—*Naval and Military Gazette*.

"It is historical, and must interest all historical readers; it is proudly national, and speaks to the heart of every Englishman; while to the sailor, the soldier, and especially the marine, whose services it chronicles, it will prove a valuable record. It is a work, which for historical information, and clearness of arrangement, may fairly compete with any of its class."—*Literary Gazette*.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo. price 21s.

COMMODORE SIR CHARLES NAPIER'S

## ACCOUNT OF THE WAR IN PORTUGAL.

BETWEEN DON PEDRO AND DON MIGUEL;

WITH PLANS OF HIS ACTION OFF CAPE ST. VINCENT.

"If we read the account of that naval action in which, with a force wholly unequal, had it not been directed by the utmost skill and valour, to compete with the enemy—if we read the account of that action in which, in the space of five minutes, a signal victory was achieved, by which the glory of St. Vincent was revived—I say, if we read the records of such an action, we shall find that the commander bore the name of Napier."—*Speech of Sir Robert Peel*.

"An excellent and spirit-stirring book—plain, honest, and straight-forward—the very stuff of which the web of history alone should be composed. This is indeed an honest, fair, and impartial history."—*Morning Chronicle*.

"In spirit and in keeping, from beginning to end, Admiral Napier's 'War in Portugal,' is the happiest picture we could conceive of the battle off Cape St. Vincent—its especial excellence consisting in a regardless bluntness of manner and language that is quite admirable and delightful."—*Monthly Review*.

"It is Cæsar's Commentaries in the first person."—*Spectator*.

"Candid to a degree, and sincere as a sailor's will. This is the very stuff of which history should be composed."—*Bell's Messenger*.

"If Admiral Napier be not distinguished by the common-place facilities of authorship, he possesses the higher qualities of truth, discretion, and clear-sightedness, in no slight degree."—*Atlas*.

"In speaking of himself and his deeds, he has hit the just and difficult medium—showing his real feelings, yet steering clear of affected modesty on the one hand, and of over-weening modesty on the other."—*Tait's Magazine*.

"This is a very graphic account of the affairs in which the gallant author figured so nobly, and added fresh lustre to the name of Napier."—*News*.

---

## THE HISTORY OF THE GERMAN LEGION,

FROM THE PERIOD OF ITS ORGANIZATION IN 1803, TO THAT OF ITS  
DISSOLUTION IN 1816.

Compiled from Manuscript Documents,

By N. LUDLOW BEAMISH, Esq. F.R.S., LATE MAJOR UNATTACHED.

Two vols. 8vo. complete, with Plans and Coloured Plates of Costumes, price £1. 10s.

*The second volume sold separately, price 10s.*

"The work is not like others we could name—a mere compilation from newspapers and magazines. Major Beamish has left no source of information unexplored; and the access he obtained to manuscript journals has enabled him to intersperse his general narrative with interesting personal anecdotes, that render this volume as delightful for those who read for amusement, as those who read for profit."—*Athenæum*.

"We are altogether much pleased with the volume, and heartily recommend it to the British public."—*Literary Gazette*.

---

In 2 vols. 8vo. with numerous plates, some coloured, price 36s.

## EXCURSIONS, ADVENTURES, AND FIELD SPORTS

IN

### CEYLON;

Its Commercial and Military Importance, and numerous advantages  
to the British Emigrant.

By LIEUT.-COLONEL JAMES CAMPBELL,

Late of the 45th and 50th Regiments, and for many years Commandant of the  
Districts of Galle, and the Seven Korles, and Judicial Agent of Government.

"These two volumes are full of interesting matter."—*Morning Herald*.

"We never wish to take up a pleasanter, more fresh spirited production than this  
of Colonel Campbell's."—*Naval and Military Gazette*.

"The book is to be heartily commended to lovers of lively anecdote and good natural  
description."—*Examiner*.

"We have to thank the Colonel for a very entertaining book on Ceylon. The work  
possesses the invaluable character both of a long residence in it on the part of the  
writer, and the very best means of observation attainable by a British resident."

*Foreign and Colonial Review*.

---

In Two Volumes, 8vo.—Price Twenty-four Shillings.

## SPAIN AND THE SPANIARDS IN 1843.

WITH ACCOUNTS OF DISTRICTS VERY SELDOM VISITED:

NATURAL HISTORY, GEOLOGY, MINES, ANTIQUITIES, FINE ARTS,  
THE CHURCH, PRONUNCIAMENTOS, FALL OF THE REGENCY, &c.

By CAPTAIN S. E. WIDDRINGTON, R.N., F.R.S.

Author of "SKETCHES OF SPAIN IN 1839, 30, 31, & 32."

"This is a solid well-informed book, written by a man of great experience, of  
unusual attainments, and thoroughly acquainted with Spain."—*Examiner*.

"These volumes contain the plain and unaffected narrative of a well-informed and  
experienced man, with much interesting and general information with respect to  
Spain, and some judicious observations on recent transactions in that country. As  
an authentic account, therefore, of the present social and physical condition of the  
Spaniards, we have read the work with interest, and recommend it to the perusal of  
our readers."—*Morning Herald*.

In 18mo. cloth, gilt leaves, price 2s. 6d. ; or, postage free, 3s., which may be sent in postage stamps,

## HINTS TO SUBALTERNES OF THE BRITISH ARMY.

By HENRY HARDBARGAIN, Late — Regt.

Dedicated to WILLIAM HIGGINSON DUFF, Esq., &c. &c. &c.

“Scribimus indocti doctique.”

*Containing—Sketches of Commanding Officers—The Art of getting Leave of Absence—Military Miseries—Glossary, &c.*

“I have also added, for the information of those non-military readers who may deign to peruse this small volume, a Glossary of those exclusively military terms, they might otherwise be at a loss to comprehend; and which, the profound ignorance that great part of the world are in with respect to military matters, renders it most necessary to explain:—for instance, I assure my readers, that the other night when I was dining out, an old gentleman asked me whether the officers who were on guard in London, on the day of the Derby, did not receive a compensatory pension from government; nay, so firmly convinced was he that such was the case, that I had some difficulty in persuading him that his impression on the subject was erroneous.”—*Preface.*

In post 8vo. price 5s.

## RECOLLECTIONS AND REFLECTIONS

RELATIVE TO THE

Duties of Troops composing the Advanced Corps of an Army,

By LIEUT.-COLONEL I. LEACH, C.B., LATE OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE,

Author of “Rough Sketches of the Life of an Old Soldier.”

*Also, by the same Author,*

A SKETCH OF THE

## SERVICES OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE,

From its Formation to the Battle of Waterloo.

In 8vo. price 2s. 6d. boards.

AN ESSAY ON THE PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTION OF

## MILITARY BRIDGES,

And the Passage of Rivers in Military Operations,

By GENERAL SIR HOWARD DOUGLAS, BART. K.S.C. &c. &c.

*The Second Edition, containing much additional Matter and Plates.*

8vo. price 20s. boards.

“Of this valuable work we expressed a very high opinion when it was first published; and now that the able author has added much important new matter to it, we need only say that it is worthy of his own high reputation as a tactician and Military Engineer; and that no soldier in Europe can know his business thoroughly without consulting it.”—*Literary Gazette.*

## NAVAL EVOLUTIONS;

A MEMOIR.

By MAJOR-GENERAL SIR HOWARD DOUGLAS, BART. K.S.C. &c. &c.

Containing a Review and Refutation of the principal Essays and Arguments advocating Mr. Clerk's Claims, in relation to the Manœuvre of the 12th of April, 1782; and vindicating, by tactical Demonstration, and numerous authentic Documents, the professional skill of the British Officers chiefly concerned on that memorable occasion.

With plates, 1 vol. 8vo. price 10s. cloth boards.

---

**NEW HISTORICAL WORK BY G. P. R. JAMES, ESQ.**

---

*Just published, in 3 vols. 8vo. cloth,*

THE

**LIFE OF HENRY THE FOURTH,**

**KING OF FRANCE AND NAVARRE.**

**By G. P. R. JAMES, Esq.**

**AUTHOR OF "THE LIFE AND TIMES OF LOUIS THE FOURTEENTH."**

---

"Never was historian more scrupulously correct, more rigorously veracious than Mr. James ; he even deteriorates occasionally from the interest of his narrative, rather than allow his imagination to colour the picture, and contents himself in general with an animated detail of external events, appearing convinced that the duties of the historian and historical novelist are almost diametrically opposed to one another. In the 'Life of Henry the Fourth' he has produced a highly valuable work, which will retain its standard worth for ever."

*New Quarterly Review.*

"There are few writers better known or more deservedly popular than Mr. James : for few have written so many books, and so many of these charming, instructive, and interesting. He has rendered fiction as spirit-moving as if it were fact, because he has invested it with all the *vraisemblance* of truth ; and in the work before us he has, by stepping into the wide domain of history, fortunately selected a hero whose life is full of adventure, and an epoch deeply tinged with the horrors, and in some instances brightly illuminated with the purest chivalry of the wildest romance. To write the Life and the Times of Henry IV. of France, required on the part of the author little of imagination, and nothing of fancy in illustration of its events. The events have but to be arranged ; they only demand a due research into contemporary documents, and then, under the pen of a practised writer, they grow into a narrative of thrilling interest. Such is the work before us. It is a carefully composed history of that transition in France in which popular feeling became for the first time an essential element in polity—in which kings and oligarchies were convinced of the necessity that it should be baffled, coerced, deluded, cajoled, or trampled out of the soil of France, as if it were a noxious weed. It is impossible to read this work without being pleased, and it is equally impossible to read it without being instructed ; for Mr. James has, by the abundant use of that valuable series of publications, for which France is indebted to Louis Philippe, thrown a great deal of light upon many transactions, which before were either misapprehended or imperfectly understood. Finally, we declare that there seldom has been a more valuable contribution to history than these three volumes of 'The Life of Henry the Fourth of France and Navarre.'"

*Morning Herald.*

Fourth Edition, 18mo. cloth, gilt leaves, price 2s. 6d.

**SHORT WHIST,**  
BY F. P. WATSON, ESQ.

To which is added,

**LONG WHIST,**  
WITH INSTRUCTIONS FOR YOUNG PLAYERS,  
BY ADMIRAL JAMES BURNEY.

REVISED BY F. P. WATSON, ESQ.

SECOND EDITION, 18mo. cloth, gilt leaves, price 3s.

**HAND-BOOK to the GAME OF BILLIARDS,**  
ADDRESSED TO THE NOVICE AND THE PROFICIENT,  
With the Laws and 44 Diagrams,

To which is added,

**POOL,**  
BY COLONEL B \* \* \* \* \*

"This is a very useful little book, and ought to be in the hands of all beginners."

*Bell's Life in London.*

"All that the Billiard player can acquire from instruction, he may gain from this hand-book; and having well studied it, it will be his own fault if, by practice, he do not become a proficient in this most delightful pastime."—*Argus*.

"Every Billiard player, be he novice or proficient, will find this a manual adapted exactly to his wishes."—*Court Journal*.

SIXTH EDITION, 18mo. sewed, price 1s.

**HINTS TO THE CHARITABLE,**

BEING

PRACTICAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE PROPER REGULATION OF  
PRIVATE CHARITY:

CONTAINING LETTERS ON

THE COAL FUND,  
THE WIFE'S SOCIETY,  
THE PENNY CLUB,  
THE BENEFIT SOCIETY,

THE LOAN FUND,  
THE CHILDRENS' ENDOWMENT  
SOCIETY,  
&c. &c. &c.

BY THE HON. AND REV. S. G. OSBORNE,

Author of "Old Rainy Day," 8vo. price 3d.; "Hand-bill for the Cottage Wall," &c.

Also by the same Author, Third Edition, 18mo. price 1s.

**HINTS**

FOR THE AMELIORATION OF THE MORAL CONDITION OF  
A VILLAGE POPULATION.

CONTENTS.

THE SQUIRE,  
THE FARMER,  
THE TRADESMAN,

KEEPERS OF PUBLIC HOUSES,  
THE LABOURER,  
FEMALE SERVICE,  
EDUCATION, &c. &c.

# NEW LIFE OF LORD NELSON.

---

PREPARING FOR PUBLICATION,

*In two volumes 8vo. with Illustrative Engravings and Fac-similes,*

## MEMOIRS OF THE LIFE

OF

VICE-ADMIRAL

# LORD VISCOUNT NELSON,

K. B.

DUKE OF BRONTE, ETC. ETC. ETC.

DERIVED PRINCIPALLY FROM HIS PRIVATE CORRESPONDENCE,  
HITHERTO UNPUBLISHED,

BY

THOMAS JOSEPH PETTIGREW, ESQ., F.R.S., F.S.A.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF GÖTTINGEN,  
ETC. ETC. ETC.

---

CONSIDERING the number of Lives\* that have been written of the Vice-Admiral Lord Viscount Nelson, and the voluminous Collection of his Dispatches and Letters published by the late Sir Nicholas Harris Nicolas, it may be reasonably inferred, that there remains nothing further in connexion with Nelson and his varied exploits to be said—that, in fact, the subject is completely exhausted; yet, upon examination it will be found that there exists a variety of interesting particulars unconfirmed—unexplained—and even mysterious. The full development of these, it must be obvious, is only to be obtained from the PRIVATE CORRESPONDENCE of the celebrated hero.

It is well known that a very intimate, indeed, an almost daily correspondence was maintained between Lord Nelson and Lady Hamilton; and in the Letters and Documents, now to be presented to the public, a Diary will literally be found containing his thoughts and reflections upon the passing events, public and private, during the course of his distinguished career. But the materials from which this new Life of Nelson is composed are not confined to the letters which passed between Lord Nelson and Lady Hamilton—they embrace also those of the King and Queen of Naples, the Emperor of Russia, the King of Sardinia, Prince Charles Felix of Savoy, many distinguished Naval Commanders and celebrated Diplomats of the time. Among these may be mentioned:—H.R.H. the Duke of Clarence, Earl St. Vincent, Earl Spencer, Earl of Bristol, Lord Elgin, Lord St. Helens,

\* By Clarke and M<sup>r</sup> Arthur, Charnock, White, Churchill, Harrison, Southey, &c.

Lord Hobart, Lord Sidmouth, Lord Collingwood, Lord Melville, Lord Eldon, Lord Grenville, Lord Hood, Lord William Gordon; the Hon. Nicholas Vansittart, the Hon. H. Addington, the Hon. Hugh Elliot, the Hon. General Sir W. Stewart, Sir Thomas Troubridge, Sir T. M. Hardy, Sir Richard Keats, Sir J. T. Duckworth, Sir John Orde, Sir Hercules Ross, Sir Brooke Boothby, Sir Sidney Smith, Sir Alexander Ball, Sir Evan Nepean, Sir Edward Berry, Sir George Rose, Sir A. S. Hamond, Sir William Hoste, Sir Henry Blackwood, Sir Pulteney Malcolm, Sir James Crawford, Sir Thomas Louis, Sir Benjamin Hallowell, Sir J. Sutton, Sir Manley Dixon, Sir J. Hillyar, Sir Thos. Staines, General Sir John Acton, General Dumouriez, Admiral Tchitchagoff, Count Bernstorff, Count Panin, Adjutant-General Lindholm, Governor Balaschoff, Captain Lloyd, Captain Parker, Captain Langford, Rev. A. J. Scott (Chaplain to Lord Nelson), John Scott, Esq. (Secretary), William Beckford, Esq., R. Payne Knight, Esq., Richard Bulkeley, Esq., William Hayley, Esq., Alexander Davison, Esq., John Tyson, Esq., Perkins Magra, Esq. (Consul-General at Tunis), Lambton Este, Esq., Rev. C. Este, Abbé Campbell, Dr. Baird, &c. Rev. Edmund Nelson (the father of Lord Nelson), Lady Nelson, Josiah Nisbet (her son), Rev. William afterwards Earl Nelson, Mrs. Matcham (Lord Nelson's sister), Maurice Nelson, Esq. (his brother), &c. &c.

The light thrown upon the transactions which took place from the battle of the Nile, August 1, 1798, to that of Trafalgar, October 21, 1805, in the course of this extensive correspondence will be found most interesting; so also will the minute particulars relating to the conduct and flight of the Neapolitan Royal Family, the surrender of the Castles of Uovo and Nuovo, the Blockade of La Valetta, the Convention of El Arish, &c. &c.

UPWARDS OF SIX HUNDRED LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS, WHICH HAVE NEVER BEFORE BEEN PRINTED, and the existence of which were scarcely known, will appear in these Memoirs, which have been written with the view of completing the History of one of the bravest and most patriotic Admirals that ever adorned the British Navy. It was originally the intention of the author simply to have edited the Correspondence, and published it as Supplementary Volumes to those which have already appeared; but upon examination the documents were found to be too numerous and too interesting to be disposed of in that manner. They embrace such a variety of topics, private and public—correct so many errors and misconceptions that have gone forth and been very generally believed—enter so unreservedly into the subjects to which they refer—and altogether render such a complete picture of Lord Nelson's mind and character—that it has been adjudged most proper to arrange them as a distinct publication, in the form of a New Memoir, illustrative of the career of the Hero. Although it has been necessary in this view to describe the various actions and incidents in which Nelson was concerned, it has been thought proper not to enter upon minute details which have already appeared, and which by those who may be professionally interested in such a matter will readily be found in the previously published Lives; but rather to endeavour to combine, in the form of a Narrative, the Correspondence alluded to with the particular events to which they apply, and which form so interesting a portion of our Naval History.

---

PUBLISHED BY

T. & W. BOONE, 29, NEW BOND STREET, LONDON;

AND

OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH.

By whom Subscribers' Names will be received.

**BATTLES OF QUATRE-BRAS, LIGNY, WAVRE,  
AND  
WATERLOO.**

*New, revised, and cheaper edition, complete in 1 vol. 8vo. uniform with  
General Napier's History of the War in the Peninsula,  
and the Wellington Dispatches.*

DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION,  
**TO HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY, THE QUEEN.**

**HISTORY OF THE  
WAR IN FRANCE AND BELGIUM,  
IN 1815,**

FROM THE TESTIMONY OF EYE-WITNESSES AND OTHER SOURCES, EXCLUSIVE AND AUTHENTIC.

**BY CAPTAIN WILLIAM SIBORNE,  
CONSTRUCTOR OF THE "WATERLOO MODEL."**

THIRD EDITION.

BEAUTIFULLY EMBELLISHED WITH MEDALLION PORTRAITS, ENGRAVED ON STEEL, OF

THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON,  
PRINCE BLÜCHER VON WAhLSTADT,  
NAPOLEON BUONAPARTE,  
THE DUKE OF BRUNSWICK,

THE PRINCE OF ORANGE,  
THE MARQUESS OF ANGLESEY,  
LORD HILL,  
SOULT, DUKE OF DALMATIA,

NEY, DUKE OF ELCHINGEN,  
COUNT ALTEN,  
SIR THOMAS PICTON.

A FOLIO ATLAS,

OF ANAGLYPTOGRAPHIC ENGRAVINGS ON STEEL, FROM MODELS, CONTAINING

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2 | PLANS OF QUATRE-BRAS, shewing different Periods of the Action. |
| 2 | - - - LIGNY - - - - - ditto.                                   |
| 2 | - - - WAVRE - - - - - ditto.                                   |
| 3 | - - - WATERLOO - - - - - ditto.                                |

WITH MAPS OF BELGIUM AND PART OF FRANCE,

*Illustrative of the above, sold separately.*

In announcing a History of the War in 1815, by the Constructor of the celebrated Model of the Battle of Waterloo, the Publishers feel confident that the undeniable proof which the latter work of art affords of the most indefatigable perseverance and industry in the collection of materials for the accurate representation of an event so fertile in glorious achievements, and so decisive in its influence upon the destinies of Europe, as also of the professional skill with which those materials have been arranged for the complete development of that ever memorable conflict, offers a sufficient guarantee for a similar application of the author's unwearied zeal and research in the task he has undertaken of supplying what still remains a desideratum in our national history and military records—a true and faithful account of that last campaign in Europe, comprising the crowning triumph of the British army, and, at the same time, the closing chapter of the military life of its illustrious chief, the Duke of Wellington.

Numerous as are the accounts already published of this great conflict, the information which they convey is generally of too vague and indistinct a nature to satisfy either the military man who seeks for professional instruction, or the general reader who desires to comprehend more clearly, in all its details, that gorgeous machinery, if it may so be termed, which was put in motion, regulated, and controlled by



## PROSPECTUS.

the greatest masters of their art, who, in modern times, have been summoned forth to wield the mighty engines of destruction wherewith nation wars against nation. How just is the observation of Jomini one of the most talented military writers of the day—"Jamais bataille ne fut plus confusément décrite que celle de Waterloo." On consulting these accounts the public glean little beyond the fact that Waterloo the allied army stood its ground during the whole day, in defiance of the reiterated attacks of the French, until the Duke of Wellington led it forward to crown its exertions with the most splendid victory. They afford us but a faint idea of those strategical movements and combinations upon which the grand design of the campaign was based by the one party, and with which it was assailed by the other; and we seek in vain for the development of those tactical dispositions by which the skill of the commanders and the valour of the combatants were fairly tested. From the want of due consecration to arrangement in the details, and the tendency too frequently manifested to compensate for this deficiency by mere anecdotic narration, the motives by which, in the great game of war, the illustrious players are actuated, are left out of view, while circumstances which especially call forth the skill of subordinate officers in command, as also the courage, the discipline, and the prowess of particular brigades, regiments, or even minor divisions of the contending masses, are either imperfectly elucidated, or, as is often the case, unhesitatingly set aside to make way for the exploits of a few individuals whose deeds, however heroic they may be deemed, constitute but isolated fractional parts of that great sum of moral energy and physical force combined, requisite to give full effect to the application of the mental powers of the chieftains under whose guidance the armies are respectively placed. These remarks have reference more or less, not only to the generality of the accounts of the Battle of Waterloo, with which the public have hitherto been furnished, but also to those of Quatre-Bras, Ligny, and Wavre; the first of which, brilliant as was the reflection which it cast upon the glory of the victors, became eclipsed solely by the more dazzling splendour of the greater, because more important, triumph of Waterloo. To endeavour to remedy these deficiencies, through the medium of the evidence of eye-witnesses, most willingly and liberally supplied, as well as carefully collated, examined, and, at the same time, proved, wherever practicable, by corroborative testimony—every component piece of information being made to dovetail, as it were, into its adjacent and corresponding parts—is the chief object of the present publication.

The opportunities which Captain Siborne has enjoyed of collecting the data requisite for this highly important work, have been peculiarly favourable. Having commenced his large Model under the authority of the government, he received permission to address himself to the several officers who might be in their power to communicate valuable information; and, with a view to render such information complete as possible, and to substantiate it by corroborative testimony, he forwarded his applications almost every surviving Waterloo officer—not limiting his inquiries to any one particular period of the action, but extending them over the whole of the Battle of Waterloo, as also of that of Quatre-Bras, and of the entire campaign. In this manner he has succeeded in obtaining from the combined evidence of eye-witnesses a mass of extremely important matter; and when the public are informed that Captain Siborne has also been in unreserved communication with the governments of our allies in that war, concerning the operations of the troops they respectively brought into the field, it is presumed that the extraordinary advantages he possesses for a satisfactory fulfilment of his design will be at once acknowledged and appreciated.

In reverting, however, to the Model, as connected with the present history, it may not be unimportant to add that some objections were raised against the position thereon assigned to a portion of the Prussian troops. These objections induced Captain Siborne to investigate more closely the evidence he had received relative to that part of the field; and the result of such re-consideration has been a perfect conviction that an error of some importance, as regards time and situation, did exist. When the Model is again submitted to the public, which it will be very shortly, that error will no longer appear, and the circumstances under which it arose will be fully accounted for and explained in the forthcoming work.

One remarkable defect which is manifested, without a single exception, in the existing histories of this campaign, consists in the want of good plans upon scales sufficiently comprehensive to admit of the positions and movements being duly illustrated. By the application of the anaglyptograph to accurately executed models, Captain Siborne has succeeded in producing plans of the different fields of battle which afford so striking a representation of the features of ground—a representation which has all the appearance of the subject being shewn in relief—that not only the military man who is accustomed to examine plans, but the civilian who has never studied any thing of the kind, will be enabled thoroughly to comprehend them even in the minutest details.

To respond to the interest felt in the record of that glorious contest by the relatives and friends of the combatants, correct lists will be appended to the work, of the names of all officers who were present distinguishing those who were killed or wounded. Marginal notes will also be introduced wherever officers' names are first mentioned in the course of the work, explaining, if surviving, their present rank and if dead, the date of their decease, and the rank which they then held.

A work brought out under such favourable auspices, and grounded upon materials which, considering the advanced age of the principal contributors, would at no remote period have been placed beyond our reach, cannot fail to excite, in a considerable degree, the attention of the public; for which reason no pains have been spared in rendering the illustrations fully commensurate with the value and importance of the design. The new edition is complete in 1 vol. 8vo. embellished with beautifully executed medallion portraits, and accompanied by a folio volume, (*to be had separately*), containing military maps and exquisitely engraved anaglyptographic plans from models expressly made by Captain Siborne, of the fields of battle of Quatre-Bras, Ligny, Wavre, and Waterloo.

# PROSPECTUS.

## SUBSCRIBERS.

HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY, THE QUEEN.  
 HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS PRINCE ALBERT, K.G.; G.C.B.  
 HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY, QUEEN ADELAIDE.  
 HER ROYAL HIGHNESS THE DUCHESS OF KENT.  
 HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS, THE DUKE OF CAMBRIDGE, K.G.; G.C.B.; G.C.H.  
 HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS, PRINCE GEORGE OF CAMBRIDGE, K.G.  
 HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY, THE KING OF HANOVER, K.G.; G.C.B.; G.C.H.  
 HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS, THE CROWN PRINCE OF HANOVER.  
 HIS MAJESTY, THE KING OF PRUSSIA.  
 HIS MAJESTY, THE KING OF SWEDEN.  
 HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS THE CROWN PRINCE OF SWEDEN.  
 HIS MAJESTY THE KING OF SAXONY.  
 HIS SERENE HIGHNESS, THE REIGNING DUKE OF BRUNSWICK.  
 HIS SERENE HIGHNESS, THE PRINCE BERNHARD OF SOLS-BRAUNFELS.

- \* General the Marquess of Anglesey, K.G., G.C.B., G.C.H.  
 His Grace the Duke of Bedford.  
 His Grace the Duke of Buccleugh.
- \* General Bacon, Portuguese Service.  
 Colonel Bainbridge, C.B., D.Q.M.G.  
 The Earl of Bandon.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Barton, K.H. 12th Lancers.
- \* Colonel Thomas Hunter Blair, C.B., Unatt.
- \* Lieut.-Gen. the Hon. Sir Edw. Blakeney, K.C.B., G.C.H.
- \* Lieut.-Gen. Lord Bloomfield, G.C.B., G.C.H.
- \* His Excellency Baron du Brunow, the Russian Minister.
- \* Lieut.-General Sir John Buchan, K.C.B.
- \* Lieut.-General Sir John Cameron, K.C.B.
- \* Major-General Sir Guy Campbell, Bart. K.C.B.
- \* Major-General Sir Octavius Carey, C.B., K.C.H.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Cator, Royal Horse Artillery.
- \* Colonel Chatterton, K.H. Commanding 4th Drag. Guards.
- \* Lieut.-Col. Sir Chas. Chichester, Commanding 81st Regt.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Clarke, Commanding 2nd (R.N.B.) Drgs.
- \* Major-General Cleland.
- \* Major Henry Clements, late of the 16th Regt.
- \* General Sir George Cockburne, G.C.H.
- \* Major William H. Cockburne, late of the 9th Regt.
- \* William Crawford, Esq. 2nd (R.N.B.) Dragoons.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel John Crowe, K.H., Unatt.
- \* His Excellency Earl de Grey, Lord Lieutenant of Ireland.
- \* The Marquess of Downshire, K. St. P.
- \* Major-General D'Aguilar, C.B.
- \* Lieut.-General Sir Charles Dalbiac, K.C.H.
- \* General Sir Ralph Darling, G.C.H.
- \* Major-General Sir Jeremiah Dickson, K.C.B.
- \* Lieut.-General Dickson, Royal Artillery.
- \* The Earl of Donoughmore, K.P.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Dorville, C.B., Unatt.
- \* Major-General Sir Neil Douglas, K.C.B., K.C.H.
- \* Major Edward Ward Drewe.
- \* Captain N. F. Dromgoole, h. p. 35th Regt.
- \* Colonel Berkeley Drummond, Scots Fusilier Guards.
- \* Colonel Dyneley, C.B., Royal Horse Artillery.
- \* The Right Hon. Lord Elliot.
- \* Lieut.-General Sir De Lacy Evans, K.C.B.
- \* Captain the Hon. C. W. Forester, 12th Lancers, A.D.C.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Gawler, K.H., Unatt.
- \* Captain E. Gilborne, late of the 71st Regt.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Grove.
- \* Lieut.-General Lord Greenock, K.C.B.
- \* Colonel the Lord Viscount Guillaume, Unatt.
- \* Major-General Hamerton, C.B.
- \* Lieut.-General the Rt. Hon. Sir Henry Hardinge, K.C.B.
- \* Lieut.-General Lord Harris, C.B., K.C.H.
- \* The late General Lord Viscount Hill, G.C.B., G.C.H.
- \* Colonel George W. Horton, Unatt.
- \* Colonel Sir George Hoste, C.B. Royal Engineers.
- \* Captain W. Humbley, h. p. Rifle Brigade.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Edward Keane, Unatt.
- \* Colonel Clark Kennedy, C.B., K.H. Commanding 7th Dragoon Guards.
- \* Colonel James Shaw Kennedy, C.B., Unatt.
- \* Captain Kincaid, late of the Rifle Brigade.
- \* Colonel Charles King, K.H., late of 16th Light Dragoons.
- \* His Grace the Duke of Leinster, K.G.
- \* Charles Lake, Esq. late of the Scots Fusilier Guards.
- \* General Sir John Lambert, G.C.B.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Leach, late of the Rifle Brigade.
- \* Lieut.-Colonel Francis La Blanc, Unatt.

- Captain the Hon. James Lindsay, Grenadier Guards.
  - General Sir Evan Lloyd, K.C.H.
  - \* Lieut.-Colonel Louis, Royal Artillery.
  - General the Honourable Sir Wm. Lumley, G.C.B.
  - General Sir Fitzroy Maclean, Bart.
  - Colonel Mansell, K.H., A.A.G.
  - \* Lieut.-Colonel Marten, Commanding 1st Dragoons.
  - The Lord Viscount Massarene.
  - The Lord Viscount Melville, K.T.
  - \* Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Mercer, Royal Artillery.
  - \* Major-General Douglas Mercer, C.B.
  - \* Lieutenant-Colonel Monins, Commanding 69th Regt.
  - \* Lieut.-Colonel H. Morrieson.
  - Colonel Sir George Morris.
  - Colonel Monro, K.H., Royal Artillery.
  - General the Right Hon. Sir George Murray, G.C.B., G.C.H.
  - \* Sir William Keith Murray, Bart.
  - \* Major-General the Honourable Henry Murray, C.B.
  - \* Lieut.-Colonel Muttelbure, C.B., late of 69th Regt.
  - \* His Grace the Duke of Northumberland, K.G.
  - \* Major-General William F. P. Napier, C.B.
  - The Marquess of Ormonde.
  - Colonel Sir Charles O'Donnell, Unatt.
  - \* Major-General O'Malley, C.B.
  - \* Major-General the Hon. Sir Hercules Pakenham, K.C.B.
  - General the Hon. Sir Edward Paget, G.C.B.
  - \* Frederick Hope Pattison, Esq., late 33rd Regiment.
  - \* Captain Lord Frederick Paulet, Coldstream Guards.
  - \* The Right Honourable Sir Robert Peel, Bart.
  - \* General Sir George Quentin, C.B., K.C.H.
  - \* His Grace the Duke of Richmond, K.G.
  - \* Major Reid, late 33rd Regiment.
  - \* Colonel T. W. Robbins, h.p. 18th Regiment.
  - \* Colonel William Rowan, C.B., A.Q.M. Gen.
  - \* Captain Lord Cosmo Russell, 93rd Highlanders, A.D.C.
  - \* Lieut.-General Shortall.
  - \* Lieut.-General Sleight, C.B.
  - \* Major-General J. Webber Smith, C.B.
  - \* Lieut.-General Lord Fitzroy Somerset, K.C.B.
  - \* Lieut.-Colonel Spottiswoode, h. p. 71st Regt.
  - \* Colonel Stawell, Commanding 12th Lancers.
  - \* General Lord Strathford, G.C.B., G.C.H.
  - \* Lieut.-General the Honourable Patrick Stuart.
  - \* The late Lieut.-General Lord Vivian, G.C.B., G.C.H.
  - \* Colonel Wade, C.B., D.A. Gen.
  - \* Major-General J. Welsh.
  - \* Colonel Whynates, C.B., K.H., Royal Artillery.
  - \* Colonel the Earl of Wiltshire.
  - \* Lieut.-General Sir Alexander Woodford, K.C.B., K.C.H.
  - \* Major-General Sir John Woodford, K.C.B., K.C.H.
  - \* Colonel Yorke, Assist. Q. M. Gen.
- Officers of the Depot of the 27th Regt. (1 copy.)  
 Officers of the Depot of the 30th Regt. (1 copy.)  
 Officers of the Depot of the 47th Regt. (1 copy.)  
 Officers of the Depot of the 64th Regt. (4 copies.)  
 Officers of the Depot of the 65th Regt. (1 copy.)  
 Officers of the Depot of the 95th Regt. (1 copy.)  
 Sergeants of the 15th Regt. (1 copy.)  
 Non-commissioned Officers Library, Royal Artillery,  
 Woolwich (1 copy.)  
 The Military Library of the Troops of Brunswick (1 copy.)  
 The Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society (1 copy.)  
 Barnstaple Book Club (1 copy.)  
 St. George's Reading Society, Bolton (1 copy.)  
 &c. &c. &c.

The Officers marked with an asterisk (\*) were at Waterloo.

## OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"It is written in a free and impartial manner, is lucid in its descriptions, surprisingly correct in details, and many important features of the campaign, which have hitherto remained either wholly unnoticed, or else kept too much in shadow, are now brought forward into proper relief; whilst the grand military operations of the period are delineated with the pen of an enlightened soldier. In a word, by separating, with much discrimination, the gold from the dross, he has turned to excellent account the materials for his undertaking, which seem to have flowed to him from every quarter; and the consequence is, that a standard history has been produced, remarkable for its spirit and vigour, as well as for its truth."—*U. S. Journal*.

"We hail this work as a standard history of the Battle of Waterloo and of the Campaign of Flanders—a worthy companion and sequel to the Peninsular Campaigns of Napier. A compilation from the testimonies of eye-witnesses (as this is) had they been dressed up for publication, and subjected individually to the public judgment, would have been cold and lifeless; here all is freshness, vivacity, unaffected truth; and thus is explained the very superior style of the writer, who possesses a nerve and spring of thought and a brilliant colouring of phrase, combined with a transparent clearness of expression, such as is rarely attained by the purely literary writer, and seldom, if ever, found in connection with profound, professional, and practical knowledge, as in this work. The most intimately acquainted with the scenery and incidents of the days of June, 1815, are loudest and most decided in their admiration of the plans and portraits which embellish these volumes. The ground is engraved by a peculiar progress, which represents in relief the slightest elevation, and sinks the smallest depression by the peculiar curve and measure of the line. Thus, the spectator looks down upon the ground of the battle itself with the clear perception of all its undulations, and its every variety of form and aspect. A second, and very different process, to which the plate is then subject, places in their positions the troops exactly as they occupied the field. These speaking plans have an accuracy hitherto unimagined, with an effect which is unequalled by any previous attempt. There are portraits of the Heroes of the campaign, which have as much merit as novelty—being engraved medallions—perfect portraits in high relief."—*Naval and Military Gazette*.

"The eventful victory which these two splendid volumes are intended to commemorate has had many historians, but none so good or comprehensive as Captain Siborne. His facility of access to official documents, both English and foreign, the assistance which he has received from the surviving Waterloo heroes of all ranks, and the zeal, energy, and talent, which he has displayed in the construction of his materials, have produced a record, not only of the battle itself, but of the whole Waterloo campaign, which is likely to be as enduring as it is creditable to his talents as a writer, and his reputation as a soldier. For ourselves we heartily thank Captain Siborne for his spirited volumes, and sincerely do we hope they will meet their due reward. Of this we are certain, they cannot be too soon in the hands, not only of every Officer of the Service, but also of every civil member of the community."—*United Service Gazette*.

"We cannot feel our debt acquitted to Captain Siborne for the pleasure and instruction his work has afforded us, if we did not bring our unqualified testimony to the minute accuracy of detail, the highly honourable and soldier-like spirit, and the admirable candour and fairness by which it is everywhere characterized. When the work was first announced for publication, we conceived great expectations from a history compiled by one whose access to every source of information was favoured both by interest in the highest quarters, and the circumstances of an official appointment on the staff. We were not disappointed. Such are the volumes before us—a Military Classic—and they will remain so while Waterloo is a word to stir the heart and nerve the arm of a British soldier."—*Dublin University, May*.

"This work is precisely what such a publication should be, a fair, impartial compilation of well authenticated testimony relative to the great events to which it has reference, interspersed with such reflections as have appeared to the author to be needful for the guidance of his unprofessional readers."—*Morning Post*.

"The accounts already published vary so much, and so little reliance is to be placed upon some of the details that we feel no apology to be requisite for noticing a work so faithful and excellent as that which has been recently published by Captain Siborne.—Of all the accounts we have yet seen, that recently published by Captain Siborne is the fullest, the fairest, we believe the most accurate—the best."—*Times, Jan. 1844*.

"We can declare in all sincerity that we have perused his narrative of marches and onslaughts with infinite satisfaction. He tells his tale with singular clearness. He is at home in all the varied movements and changes of position, &c.; and his account of Cavalry Charges, especially in the affair of Quatre Bras, the advance of columns and cannonading, sweep you onwards as if the scene described were actually passing under your eyes. His Plans and Charts too are excellent, and every way worthy of the modellist of the Field of Waterloo. We thank Captain S., not only for the amusement we have derived from his performance, but for the opportunity with which the appearance of a genuine English History of the Battle of Waterloo supplies us, of refuting some of the errors regarding it into which other historians have fallen."—*Fraser's Mag.*

PUBLISHED BY T. & W. BOONE, 29, NEW BOND STREET, LONDON;

AND SOLD BY

OLIVER AND BOYD, AND FRASER AND CO. EDINBURGH.







